

# **FUTURE VISION BIE**

**One Stop for All Study Materials  
& Lab Programs**



*Future Vision*

**By K B Hemanth Raj**

**Scan the QR Code to Visit the Web Page**



**Or**

**Visit : <https://hemanthrajhemu.github.io>**

**Gain Access to All Study Materials according to VTU,  
CSE – Computer Science Engineering,  
ISE – Information Science Engineering,  
ECE - Electronics and Communication Engineering  
& MORE...**

**Join Telegram to get Instant Updates: [https://bit.ly/VTU\\_TELEGRAM](https://bit.ly/VTU_TELEGRAM)**

**Contact: MAIL: [futurevisionbie@gmail.com](mailto:futurevisionbie@gmail.com)**

**INSTAGRAM: [www.instagram.com/hemanthraj\\_hemu/](https://www.instagram.com/hemanthraj_hemu/)**

**INSTAGRAM: [www.instagram.com/futurevisionbie/](https://www.instagram.com/futurevisionbie/)**

**WHATSAPP SHARE: <https://bit.ly/FVBIESHARE>**

# **ADVANCED COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE**

## **Parallelism, Scalability, Programmability**

Second Edition

**Kai Hwang**

*Professor of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science  
University of Southern California, USA*

**Naresh Jotwani**

*Director, School of Solar Energy  
Pandit Deendayal Petroleum University  
Gandhinagar, Gujarat*



**Tata McGraw Hill Education Private Limited**  
**NEW DELHI**

*McGraw-Hill Offices*

New Delhi New York St Louis San Francisco Auckland Bogotá Caracas  
Kuala Lumpur Lisbon London Madrid Mexico City Milan Montreal  
San Juan Santiago Singapore Sydney Tokyo Toronto

**<https://hemanthrajhemu.github.io>**

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| 7.3.2 Present and Future Development | 314 |
| 7.3.3 The Intel Paragon System       | 316 |
| 7.4 Message-Passing Mechanisms       | 318 |
| 7.4.1 Message-Routing Schemes        | 319 |
| 7.4.2 Deadlock Virtual Channels      | 322 |
| 7.4.3 Flow Control Strategies        | 324 |
| 7.4.4 Multicast Routing Algorithms   | 329 |
| <i>Summary</i>                       | 334 |
| <i>Exercises</i>                     | 335 |

## 8. Multivector and SIMD Computers

341

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 8.1 Vector Processing Principles              | 341 |
| 8.1.1 Vector Instruction Types                | 341 |
| 8.1.2 Vector-Access Memory Schemes            | 345 |
| 8.1.3 Early Supercomputers                    | 347 |
| 8.2 Multivector Multiprocessors               | 352 |
| 8.2.1 Performance-Directed Design Rules       | 352 |
| 8.2.2 Cray Y-MP, C-90, and MPP                | 356 |
| 8.2.3 Fujitsu VP2000 and VPP500               | 362 |
| 8.2.4 Mainframes and Minisupercomputers       | 365 |
| 8.3 Compound Vector Processing                | 372 |
| 8.3.1 Compound Vector Operations              | 372 |
| 8.3.2 Vector Loops and Chaining               | 374 |
| 8.3.3 Multipipeline Networking                | 378 |
| 8.4 SIMD Computer Organizations               | 382 |
| 8.4.1 Implementation Models                   | 383 |
| 8.4.2 The CM-2 Architecture                   | 385 |
| 8.4.3 The MasPar MP-1 Architecture            | 388 |
| 8.5 The Connection Machine CM-5               | 392 |
| 8.5.1 A Synchronized MIMD Machine             | 392 |
| 8.5.2 The CM-5 Network Architecture           | 395 |
| 8.5.3 Control Processors and Processing Nodes | 397 |
| 8.5.4 Interprocessor Communications           | 399 |
| <i>Summary</i>                                | 403 |
| <i>Exercises</i>                              | 404 |

## 9. Scalable, Multithreaded, and Dataflow Architectures

408

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 9.1 Latency-Hiding Techniques     | 408 |
| 9.1.1 Shared Virtual Memory       | 408 |
| 9.1.2 Prefetching Techniques      | 412 |
| 9.1.3 Distributed Coherent Caches | 413 |

|       |  |     |
|-------|--|-----|
| 9.1.4 | Scalable Coherence Interface             | 415 |
| 9.1.5 | Relaxed Memory Consistency               | 418 |
| 9.2   | Principles of Multithreading             | 421 |
| 9.2.1 | Multithreading Issues and Solutions      | 421 |
| 9.2.2 | Multiple-Context Processors              | 426 |
| 9.2.3 | Multidimensional Architectures           | 431 |
| 9.3   | Fine-Grain Multicomputers                | 434 |
| 9.3.1 | Fine-Grain Parallelism                   | 434 |
| 9.3.2 | The MIT J-Machine                        | 435 |
| 9.3.3 | The Caltech Mosaic C                     | 442 |
| 9.4   | Scalable and Multithreaded Architectures | 444 |
| 9.4.1 | The Stanford Dash Multiprocessor         | 444 |
| 9.4.2 | The Kendall Square Research KSR-I        | 448 |
| 9.4.3 | The Tera Multiprocessor System           | 452 |
| 9.5   | Dataflow and Hybrid Architectures        | 458 |
| 9.5.1 | The Evolution of Dataflow Computers      | 458 |
| 9.5.2 | The ETL/EM-4 in Japan                    | 461 |
| 9.5.3 | The MIT/Motorola *T Prototype            | 463 |
|       | <i>Summary</i>                           | 465 |
|       | <i>Exercises</i>                         | 466 |

## Part IV Software for Parallel Programming 471

### 10. Parallel Models, Languages, and Compilers 473

|        |   |     |
|--------|---|-----|
| 10.1   | Parallel Programming Models             | 473 |
| 10.1.1 | Shared-Variable Model                   | 473 |
| 10.1.2 | Message-Passing Model                   | 477 |
| 10.1.3 | Data-Parallel Model                     | 479 |
| 10.1.4 | Object-Oriented Model                   | 481 |
| 10.1.5 | Functional and Logic Models             | 483 |
| 10.2   | Parallel Languages and Compilers        | 484 |
| 10.2.1 | Language Features for Parallelism       | 485 |
| 10.2.2 | Parallel Language Constructs            | 487 |
| 10.2.3 | Optimizing Compilers for Parallelism    | 488 |
| 10.3   | Dependence Analysis of Data Arrays      | 491 |
| 10.3.1 | Iteration Space and Dependence Analysis | 491 |
| 10.3.2 | Subscript Separability and Partitioning | 494 |
| 10.3.3 | Categorized Dependence Tests            | 496 |
| 10.4   | Code Optimization and Scheduling        | 501 |
| 10.4.1 | Scalar Optimization with Basic Blocks   | 501 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 10.4.2 Local and Global Optimizations            | 505 |
| 10.4.3 Vectorization and Parallelization Methods | 508 |
| 10.4.4 Code Generation and Scheduling            | 514 |
| 10.4.5 Trace Scheduling Compilation              | 518 |
| 10.5 Loop Parallelization and Pipelining         | 520 |
| 10.5.1 Loop Transformation Theory                | 520 |
| 10.5.2 Parallelization and Wavefronting          | 523 |
| 10.5.3 Tiling and Localization                   | 526 |
| 10.5.4 Software Pipelining                       | 531 |
| <i>Summary</i>                                   | 533 |
| <i>Exercises</i>                                 | 534 |

## 11. Parallel Program Development and Environments

537

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 11.1 Parallel Programming Environments         | 537 |
| 11.1.1 Software Tools and Environments         | 537 |
| 11.1.2 Y-MP, Paragon and CM-5 Environments     | 541 |
| 11.1.3 Visualization and Performance Tuning    | 543 |
| 11.2 Synchronization and Multiprocessing Modes | 545 |
| 11.2.1 Principles of Synchronization           | 545 |
| 11.2.2 Multiprocessor Execution Modes          | 547 |
| 11.2.3 Multitasking on Cray Multiprocessors    | 548 |
| 11.3 Shared-Variable Program Structures        | 552 |
| 11.3.1 Locks for Protected Access              | 553 |
| 11.3.2 Semaphores and Applications             | 556 |
| 11.3.3 Monitors and Applications               | 559 |
| 11.4 Message-Passing Program Development       | 562 |
| 11.4.1 Distributing the Computation            | 562 |
| 11.4.2 Synchronous Message Passing             | 564 |
| 11.4.3 Asynchronous Message Passing            | 565 |
| 11.5 Mapping Programs onto Multicomputers      | 566 |
| 11.5.1 Domain Decomposition Techniques         | 566 |
| 11.5.2 Control Decomposition Techniques        | 570 |
| 11.5.3 Heterogeneous Processing                | 573 |
| <i>Summary</i>                                 | 577 |
| <i>Exercises</i>                               | 578 |

## Part V Instruction and System Level Parallelism

583

### 12. Instruction Level Parallelism

585

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| 12.1 Introduction        | 585 |
| 12.2 Basic Design Issues | 587 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 12.3 Problem Definition  | 589        |
| 12.4 Model of a Typical Processor                                  | 594        |
| 12.5 Compiler-detected Instruction Level Parallelism               | 598        |
| 12.6 Operand Forwarding  | 602        |
| 12.7 Reorder Buffer  | 605        |
| 12.8 Register Renaming   | 607        |
| 12.9 Tomasulo's Algorithm  | 610        |
| 12.10 Branch Prediction  | 615        |
| 12.11 Limitations in Exploiting Instruction Level Parallelism      | 618        |
| 12.12 Thread Level Parallelism                                     | 623        |
| <i>Summary</i>   | 624        |
| <i>Exercises</i>   | 626        |
| <b>13. Trends in Parallel Systems</b>                              | <b>629</b> |
| 13.1 Brief Overview of Technology                                  | 629        |
| 13.1.1 Semiconductor Technology                                    | 630        |
| 13.1.2 Display Technology  | 632        |
| 13.1.3 Storage Technology  | 633        |
| 13.1.4 Interconnect and Network Technologies                       | 635        |
| 13.2 Forms of Parallelism  | 639        |
| 13.2.1 Structural Parallelism versus Instruction Level Parallelism | 640        |
| 13.2.2 A Simple Parallel Computation                               | 642        |
| 13.2.3 Parallel Algorithms   | 646        |
| 13.2.4 Stream Processing   | 651        |
| 13.3 Case Studies  | 654        |
| 13.3.1 Cray Line of Computer Systems                               | 654        |
| 13.3.2 PowerPC Architecture, IBM Power7 & Blue Gene                | 657        |
| 13.3.3 Tilera's TILE64 System                                      | 658        |
| 13.3.4 Sun UltraSparc T2 Processor                                 | 660        |
| 13.3.5 AMD Opteron   | 662        |
| 13.3.6 Intel Pentium Processors                                    | 663        |
| 13.4 Parallel Programming Models and Languages                     | 665        |
| 13.4.1 Parallel Programming Language Chapel                        | 665        |
| 13.4.2 Function Libraries for Parallel Programming                 | 669        |
| <i>Summary</i>   | 673        |
| <i>Exercises</i>   | 674        |
| <b>Answers to Selected Exercises</b>                               | <b>679</b> |
| <b>Bibliography</b>  | <b>687</b> |
| <b>Index</b>   | <b>707</b> |

# Part IV

## Software for Parallel Programming

---

### Chapter 10

#### Parallel Models, Languages, and Compilers

### Chapter 11

#### Parallel Program Development and Environments

### Summary

Part IV discusses software and programming requirements of parallel/vector computers. We begin with a characterization of parallel programming models: shared-variable, message-passing, data-parallel, object-oriented, functional, logic, and heterogeneous. Then we evaluate parallel languages and compiler technologies for parallel programming. This includes the study of language features, programming environments, compilers for parallelization and vectorization, and performance tuning. We will describe locks, semaphores, monitors, synchronization, multitasking and various program decomposition techniques.

**<https://hemanthrajhemu.github.io>**

## 10

# Parallel Models, Languages, and Compilers

This chapter is devoted to programming and compiler aspects of parallel and vector computers. To study beyond architectural capabilities, we must learn about the basic models for parallel programming and how to design optimizing compilers for parallelism. Models studied include those for shared-variable, message-passing, object-oriented, data-parallel, functional, and logic programming. We examine language extensions, parallelizing vectorizing, and trace-driven compilers designed to support parallel programming.

10.1

## PARALLEL PROGRAMMING MODELS

A programming model is a collection of program abstractions providing a programmer a simplified and transparent view of the computer hardware/software system. Parallel programming models are specifically designed for multiprocessors, multicompilers, or vector/SIMD computers. Five models are characterized below for these computers that exploit parallelism with different execution paradigms.

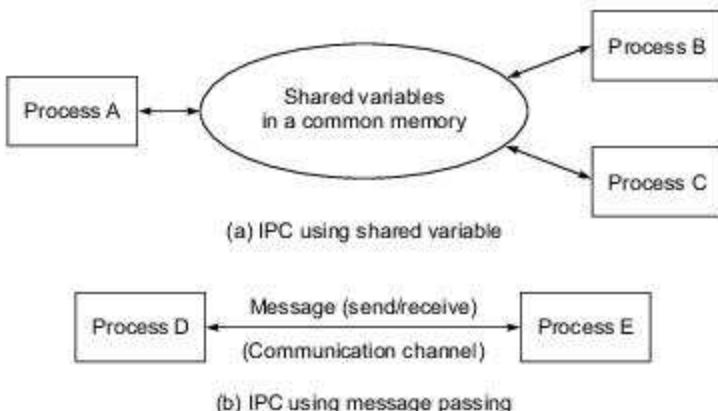
### 10.1.1 Shared-Variable Model

In all programming systems, we consider processors active resources and memory and I/O devices passive resources. The basic computational units in a parallel program are *processes* corresponding to operations performed by related code segments. The granularity of a process may vary in different programming models and applications.

A *program* is a collection of processes. Parallelism depends on how interprocess communication (IPC) is implemented. Fundamental issues in parallel programming are centered around the *specification, creation, suspension, reactivation, migration, termination, and synchronization* of concurrent processes residing in the same or different processors.

By limiting the scope and access rights, the process address space may be shared or restricted. To ensure orderly IPC, a mutual exclusion property requires the exclusive access of a shared object by one process at a time. We address these issues and explore their solutions below.

**Shared-Variable Communication** Multiprocessor programming is based on the use of shared variables in a common memory for IPC. As depicted in Fig. 10.1a, shared-variable IPC demands the use of shared memory and mutual exclusion among multiple processes accessing the same set of variables.



**Fig. 10.1** Two basic mechanisms for interprocess communication (IPC).

Fine-grain MIMD parallelism is exploited in tightly coupled multiprocessors. Interprocessor synchronization can be implemented either unconditionally or conditionally, depending on the mechanisms used.

The main issues in using this model include protected access of critical sections, memory consistency, atomicity of memory operations, fast synchronization, shared data structures, and fast data movement techniques, to be studied in Section 10.2.

**Critical Section** A *critical section* (CS) is a code segment accessing shared variables, which must be executed by only one process at a time and which, once started, must be completed without interruption. In other words, a CS operation is indivisible and satisfies the following requirements:

- *Mutual exclusion*—At most one process executing the CS at a time.
- *No deadlock in waiting*—No circular wait by two or more processes trying to enter the CS; at least one will succeed.
- *Nonpreemption*—No interrupt until completion, once entered the CS.
- *Eventual entry*—A process attempting to enter its CS will eventually succeed.

**Protected Access** The main problem associated with the use of a CS is avoiding race conditions where concurrent processes executing in different orders produce different results. The granularity of a CS affects the performance. If the boundary of a CS is too large, it may limit parallelism due to excessive waiting by competing processes.

When the CS is too small, it may add unnecessary code complexity or software overhead. The trick is to shorten a heavy-duty CS or to use conditional CSs to maintain a balanced performance.

In Chapter 11, we will study shared variables in the form of *locks* for implementing mutual exclusion in CSs. *Binary* and *counting semaphores* are used to implement CSs and to avoid system deadlocks. *Monitors* are suitable for structured programming.

Shared-variable programming requires special atomic operations for IPC, new language constructs for expressing parallelism, compilation support for exploiting parallelism, and OS support for scheduling parallel events and avoiding resource conflicts. Of course, all of these depend on the memory consistency model used.

Shared-memory multiprocessors use shared variables for interprocessor communications. Multiprocessing takes various forms, depending on the number of users and the granularity of divided computations. Four operational modes used in programming multiprocessor systems are specified below:

**Multiprogramming** Traditionally, *multiprogramming* is defined as multiple independent programs running on a single processor or on a multiprocessor by time-sharing use of the system resources. A multiprocessor can be used in solving a single large problem or in running multiple programs across the processors.

A multiprogrammed multiprocessor allows multiple programs to run concurrently through time-sharing of all the processors in the system. Multiple programs are interleaved in their CPU and I/O activities. When a program enters I/O mode, the processor switches to another program. Therefore, multiprogramming is not restricted to a multiprocessor. Even on a single processor, multiprogramming is usually implemented.

**Multiprocessing** When multiprogramming is implemented at the process level on a multiprocessor, it is called *multiprocessing*. Two types of multiprocessing are specified below. If interprocessor communications are handled at the instruction level, the multiprocessor operates in MIMD mode. If interprocessor communications are handled at the program, subroutine, or procedural level, the machine operates in MPMD (*multiple programs over multiple data streams*) mode.

In other words, we define MIMD multiprocessing with fine-grain instruction-level parallelism. MPMD multiprocessing exploits coarse-grain procedure-level parallelism. In both multiprocessing modes, shared variables are used to achieve interprocessor communication. This is quite different from the operations implemented on a message-passing system.

**Multitasking** A single program can be partitioned into multiple interrelated tasks concurrently executed on a multiprocessor. This has been implemented as *multitasking* on Cray multiprocessors. Thus multitasking provides the parallel execution of two or more parts of a single program. A job efficiently multitasked requires less execution time. Multitasking is achieved with added codes in the original program in order to provide proper linkage and synchronization of divided tasks.

Tradeoffs do exist between multitasking and not multitasking. Only when overhead is short should multitasking be practiced. Sometimes, not all parts of a program can be divided into parallel tasks. Therefore, multitasking tradeoffs must be analyzed before implementation. Section 11.2 will treat this issue.

**Multithreading** The traditional UNIX/OS has a single-threaded kernel in which only one process can receive OS kernel service at a time. In a multiprocessor as studied in Chapter 9, we want to extend the single kernel to be multithreaded. The purpose is to allow multiple *threads* of lightweight processes to share the same address space and to be executed by the same or different processors simultaneously.

The concept of *multithreading* is an extension of the concepts of multitasking and multiprocessing. The purpose is to exploit fine-grain parallelism in modern multiprocessors built with multiple-context processors or superscalar processors with multiple-instruction issues. Each thread will use a separate program counter. Resource conflicts are the major problem to be resolved in a multithreaded architecture.

The levels of sophistication in securing data coherence and in preserving event order increase from monoprogramming to multitasking, to multiprogramming, to multiprocessing, and to multithreading in that order. Memory management and special protection mechanisms must be developed to ensure correctness and data integrity in parallel thread operations.

**Partitioning and Replication** The goal of parallel processing is to exploit parallelism as much as possible with the lowest overhead. *Program partitioning* is a technique for decomposing a large program and data set into many small pieces for parallel execution by multiple processors.

Program partitioning involves both programmers and the compiler. Parallelism detection by users is often explicitly expressed with parallel language constructs. Program restructuring techniques can be used to transform sequential programs into a parallel form more suitable for multiprocessors. Ideally, this transformation should be carried out automatically by a compiler.

*Program replication* refers to duplication of the same program code for parallel execution on multiple processors over different data sets. Partitioning is often practiced on a shared-memory multiprocessor system, while replication is more suitable for distributed-memory message-passing multicompilers.

So far, only special program constructs, such as independent loops and independent scalar operations, have been successfully parallelized. Clustering of independent scalar operations into vector or VLIW instructions is another approach toward this end.

**Scheduling and Synchronization** Scheduling of divided program modules on parallel processors is much more complicated than scheduling of sequential programs on a uniprocessor. *Static scheduling* is conducted at post-compile time. Its advantage is low overhead but the shortcoming is a possible mismatch with the run-time profile of each task and therefore potentially poor resource utilization.

*Dynamic scheduling* catches the run-time conditions. However, dynamic scheduling requires fast context switching, preemption, and much more OS support. The advantages of dynamic scheduling include better resource utilization at the expense of higher scheduling overhead. Static and dynamic methods can be jointly used in a sophisticated multiprocessor system demanding higher efficiency.

In a conventional UNIX system, *interprocessor communication* (IPC) is conducted at the process level. Processes can be created by any processor. All processes asynchronously accessing the shared data must be protected so that only one is allowed to access the shared writable data at a time. This *mutual exclusion* property is enforced with the use of locks, semaphores, and monitors to be described in Chapter 11.

At the control level, virtual program counters can be assigned to different processes or threads. Counting semaphores or barrier counters can be used to indicate the completion of parallel branch activities. One can also use atomic memory operations such as *Test&Set* and *Fetch&Add* to achieve synchronization. Software-implemented synchronization may require longer overhead. Hardware barriers or combining networks can be used to reduce the synchronization time.

**Cache Coherence and Protection** Besides maintaining data coherence in a memory hierarchy, multiprocessors must assure data consistency between private caches and the shared memory. The multicache coherence problem demands an invalidation or update after each write operation. These coherence control operations require special bus or network protocols for implementation as noted in previous chapters. A memory system is said to be *coherent* if the value returned on a read instruction is always the value written by the latest write instruction on the same memory location. The access order to the caches and to the main memory makes a big difference in computational results.

The shared memory of a multiprocessor can be used in various consistency models as discussed in Chapters 4 and 9. Sequential consistency demands that all memory accesses be strongly ordered on a global basis. A processor cannot issue an access until the most recently shared writable memory access has been

globally performed. A weak consistency model enforces ordering and coherence at explicit synchronization points only. Programming with the processor consistency or release consistency may be more restricted, but memory performance is expected to improve.

### 10.1.2 Message-Passing Model

Multicomputer programming is depicted in Fig. 10.1b. Two processes D and E residing at different processor nodes may communicate with each other by passing messages through a direct or indirect network. The messages may be instructions, data, synchronization, or interrupt signals, etc. The communication delay caused by message passing is much longer than that caused by accessing shared variables in a common memory. Multicomputers are considered loosely coupled multiprocessors. Two message-passing programming models are introduced below. Techniques for message-passing programming are treated in Sections 11.4 and 11.5. Message Passing Interface (MPI) is discussed in Chapter 13.

**Synchronous Message Passing** Since there is no shared memory, there is no need for mutual exclusion. *Synchronous message* passing must synchronize the sender process and the receiver process in time and space, just like a telephone call using circuit-switched lines. In general, no buffers are used in the communication channels. That is why synchronous communication can be blocked by channels being busy or in error since only one message is allowed to be transmitted via a channel at a time.

In a *synchronous* paradigm, the passing of a message must synchronize the sending process and the receiving process in time and space. Besides having a time connection, the sender and receiver must also be linked by physical communication channels in space. A path of channels must be ready to enable the message passing between them.

In other words, the sender and receiver must be coupled in both time and space synchronously. If one process is ready to communicate and the other is not, the one that is ready must be blocked (or wait). In this sense, synchronous communication has been also called a blocking communication scheme.

**Asynchronous Message Passing** Asynchronous communication does not require that message sending and receiving be synchronized in time and space. Buffers are often used in channels, which results in nonblocking in message passing provided sufficiently large buffers are used or the network traffic is not saturated.

However, arbitrary communication delays may be experienced because the sender may not know if and when the message has been received until acknowledgment is received from the receiver. This scheme is like a postal service using mailboxes (channel buffers) with no synchronization between senders and receivers.

Nonblocking can be achieved by *asynchronous message passing* in which two processes do not have to be synchronized either in time or in space. The sender is allowed to send a message without blocking, regardless of whether the receiver is ready or not.

Asynchronous communication requires the use of buffers to hold the messages along the path of the connecting channels. Since channel buffers are finite, the sender will eventually be blocked. In a synchronous multicomputer, buffers are not needed because only one message is allowed to pass through a channel at a time.

The critical issue in programming this model is how to distribute or duplicate the program codes and data sets over the processing nodes. Tradeoffs between computation time and communication overhead must be considered.

As explained in Chapter 9, fine-grain concurrent programming with global naming was aimed at merging the shared-variable and message-passing mechanisms for heterogeneous processing.

**Distributing the Computations** Program replication and data distribution are used in multicomputers. The processors in a multicomputer (or a NORMA machine) are loosely coupled in the sense that they do not share memory. Message passing in a multicomputer is handled at the subprogram level rather than at the instructional or fine-grain process level as in a tightly coupled multiprocessor. That is why explicit parallelism is more attractive for multicomputers.



### Example 10.1 A concurrent program for distributed computing on a multicomputer (Justin Rattner, Intel Scientific Computers, 1990)

The computation involved is the evaluation of  $\pi$  as the area under the curve  $f(x)$  between 0 and 1 as shown in Fig. 10.2. Using a rectangle rule, we write the integral in discrete form:

$$\pi = \int_0^1 f(x) dx = \int_0^1 \frac{4}{1+x^2} dx \doteq h \sum_{i=1}^n f(x_i)$$

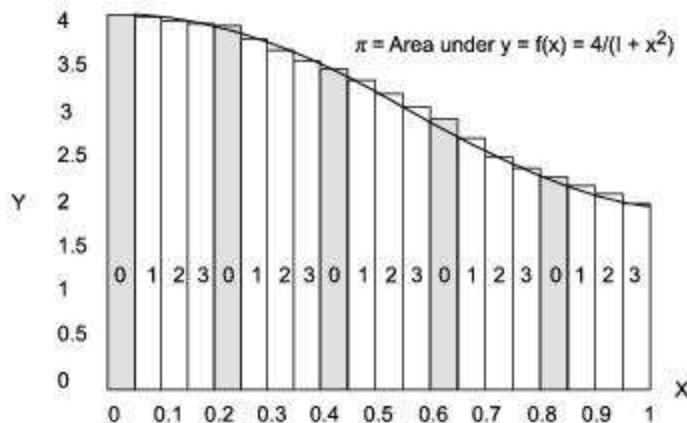


Fig. 10.2 Domain decomposition for concurrent programming on a multicomputer with four processors

where  $h = 1/n$  is the panel width,  $x_i = h(i - 0.5)$  are the midpoints, and  $n$  is the number of panels (rectangles) to be computed.

Assume a four-node multicomputer with four processors labeled 0, 1, 2, and 3. The rectangle rule decomposition is shown with  $n = 20$  and  $h = 1/20 = 0.05$ . Each processor node is assigned to compute the areas of five rectangular panels. Therefore, the computational load of all four nodes is balanced.

| Host program      | Node program               |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| input(n)          | p = numnodes()             |
| send( n,allnodes) | me = mynode()              |
| recv(Pi)          | recv(n)                    |
| output(Pi)        | h = 1.0/n                  |
|                   | sum = 0                    |
|                   | <b>Do</b> i = me + 1, n, p |
|                   | x = h × (i - 0.5)          |
|                   | sum = sum + f(x)           |
|                   | <b>End Do</b>              |
|                   | pi = h × sum               |
|                   | gop('+', Pi, host)         |

Each node executes a separate copy of the node program. Several system calls are used to achieve message passing between the host and the nodes. The host program *sends* the number of panels *n* as a message to all the nodes, which receive it accordingly in the node program. The commands *numnodes* and *mynode* specify how big the system is and which node it is, respectively.

The software for the iPSC system offers a global summing operation *gop*('+', pi, host) which iteratively pairs nodes that exchange their current partial sums. Each partial sum received from another node is added to the sum at the receiving node, and the new sum is sent out in the next round of message exchange.

Eventually, all the nodes accumulate the global sum multiplied by the height ( $pi = h \times sum$ ) which will be returned to the host for printout. Not all pairs of node communications need to be carried out. Only  $\log_2 N$  rounds of message exchanges are required to compute the adder-tree operations, where *N* is the number of nodes in the system. This point will be further elaborated in Chapter 13.

### 10.1.3 Data-Parallel Model

With the lockstep operations in SIMD computers, the data-parallel code is easier to write and to debug because parallelism is explicitly handled by hardware synchronization and flow control. Data-parallel languages are modified directly from standard serial programming languages. For example, Fortran 90 is specially tailored for data parallelism. Thinking Machines' C\* was specially designed for programming the erstwhile Connection Machines.

Data-parallel programs require the use of pre-distributed data sets. Thus the choice of parallel data structures makes a big difference in data-parallel programming. Interconnected data structures are also needed to facilitate data exchange operations. In summary, data-parallel programming emphasizes local computations and data routing operations (such as permutation, replication, reduction, and parallel prefix). It is applied to fine-grain problems using regular grids, stencils, and multidimensional signal/image data sets.

Data parallelism can be implemented either on SIMD computers or on SPMD multicomputers, depending on the grain size and operation mode adopted. In this section, we consider mainly parallel programming on SIMD computers that emphasize fine-grain data parallelism under synchronous control. Data parallelism often leads to a high degree of parallelism involving thousands of data operations concurrently. This is rather different from control parallelism which offers a much lower degree of parallelism at the instruction level.

Synchronization of data-parallel operations is done at compile time rather than at run time. Hardware synchronization is enforced by the control unit to carry out the lockstep execution of SIMD programs. We address below instruction/data broadcast, masking, and data-routing operations separately. Languages, compilers, and the conversion of SIMD programs to run on MIMD multicomputers are also discussed.

**Data Parallelism** Ever since the introduction of the Illiac IV computer, programming SIMD array processors has been a challenge for computational scientists. The main difficulty in using the Illiac IV had been to match the problem size with the fixed machine size. In other words, large arrays or matrices had to be partitioned into 64-element segments before they could be effectively processed by the 64 processing elements (PEs) in the Illiac IV machine.

A latter SIMD computer, the Connection Machine CM-2, offered bit-slice fine-grain data parallelism using 16,384 PEs concurrently in a single-array configuration. This demanded a lower degree of array segmentation and thus offered higher flexibility in programming.

Synchronous SIMD programming differs from asynchronous MIMD programming in that all PEs in an SIMD computer operate in a lockstep fashion, whereas all processors in an MIMD computer execute different instructions asynchronously. As a result, SIMD computers do not have the mutual exclusion or synchronization problems associated with multiprocessors or multicomputers.

Instead, inter-PE communications are directly controlled by hardware. Besides lockstep in computing operations among all PEs, inter-PE data communication is also carried out in lockstep. These synchronized instruction executions and data-routing operations make SIMD computers rather efficient in exploring spatial parallelism in large arrays, grids, or meshes of data.

In an SIMD program, scalar instructions are directly executed by the control unit. Vector instructions are broadcast to all processing elements. Vector operands are loaded into the PEs from local memories simultaneously using a global address with different offsets in local index registers. Vector stores can be executed in a similar manner. Constant data can be broadcast to all PEs simultaneously.

A masking pattern (binary vector) can be set under program control so that PEs can be enabled or disabled dynamically in any instruction cycle. Masking instructions are directly supported by hardware. Data-routing vector operations are supported by an inter-PE routing network, which is also under program control on a dynamic basis.

**Array Language Extensions** Array extensions in data-parallel languages are represented by high-level data types. We will specify Fortran 90 array notations in Section 10.2.2. The array syntax enables the removal of some nested loops in the code and should reflect the architecture of the array processor.

Examples of array processing languages are CFD for the Illiac IV, DAP Fortran for the AMT/Distributed Array Processor, C\* for the TMC/Connection Machine, and MPF for the MasPar family of massively parallel computers.

An SIMD programming language should have a global address space, which obviates the need for explicit data routing between PEs. The array extensions should have the ability to make the number of PEs a function of the problem size rather than a function of the target machine.

Connection Machine C\* language satisfied these requirements nicely. A Pascal-based language, *Actus*, was developed by R.H. Perrott for problem-oriented SIMD programming. *Actus* offered hardware transparency, application flexibility, and explicit control structures in both program structuring and data typing operations.

**Compiler Support** To support data-parallel programming, the array language expressions and their optimizing compilers must be embedded in familiar standards such as Fortran 77, Fortran 90, and C. The idea is to unify the program execution model, facilitate precise control of massively parallel hardware, and enable incremental migration to data-parallel execution.

Compiler-optimized control of SIMD machine hardware allows the programmer to drive the PE array transparently. The compiler must separate the program into scalar and parallel components and integrate with the OS environment.

The compiler technology must allow array extensions to optimize data placement, minimize data movement, and virtualize the dimensions of the PE array. The compiler generates data-parallel machine code to perform operations on arrays.

*Array sectioning* allows a programmer to reference a section or a region of a multidimensional array. Array sections are designated by specifying a start index, a bound, and a stride. *Vector-valued subscripts* are often used to construct arrays from arbitrary permutations of another array. These expressions are vectors that map the desired elements into the target array. They facilitate the implementation of *gather* and *scatter* operations on a vector of indices.

SIMD programs can in theory be recompiled for MIMD architecture. The idea is to develop a source-to-source precompiler to convert, for example, from Connection Machine C\* programs to C programs running on an nCUBE message-passing multicomputer in SPMD mode.

In fact, SPMD programs are a special class of SIMD programs which emphasize medium-grain parallelism and synchronization at the subprogram level rather than at the instruction level. In this sense, the data-parallel programming model applies to both synchronous SIMD and loosely coupled MIMD computers. Program conversion between different machine architectures is needed to broaden software portability. The parallel programming paradigm based on openMP standard is described in Chapter 13.

#### 10.1.4 Object-Oriented Model

If one considers special language features and their implications, additional models for parallel programming can be introduced. An object-oriented programming model is characterized below.

In this model, *objects* are dynamically created and manipulated. Processing is performed by sending and receiving messages among objects. Concurrent programming models are built up from low-level objects such as processes, queues, and semaphores into high-level objects like monitors and program modules.

**Concurrent OOP** The popularity of *object-oriented programming* (OOP) is attributed to three application demands: First, there is increased use of interacting processes by individual users, such as the use of multiple windows. Second, workstation networks have become a cost-effective mechanism for resource sharing and distributed problem solving. Third, multiprocessor technology in several variants has advanced to the point of providing supercomputing power at a fraction of the traditional cost.

As a matter of fact, program abstraction leads to program modularity and software reusability as is commonly experienced with OOP. Other areas that have encouraged the growth of OOP include the development of CAD (computer-aided design) tools and other sophisticated applications with graphics capabilities.

Objects are program entities which encapsulate data and operations into single computational units. It turns out that concurrency is a natural consequence of the concept of objects. In fact, the concurrent use of coroutines in conventional programming is very similar to the concurrent manipulation of objects in OOP.

The development of *concurrent object-oriented programming* (COOP) provides an alternative model for concurrent computing on multiprocessors or on multicompilers. Various object models differ in the internal behavior of objects and in how they interact with each other.

**An Actor Model** COOP must support patterns of reuse and classification, for example, through the use of inheritance which allows all instances of a particular class to share the same property. An *actor model* developed at MIT is presented as one framework for COOP.

*Actors* are self-contained, interactive, independent components of a computing system that communicate by asynchronous message passing. In an actor model, message passing is attached with semantics. Basic actor primitives include:

- (1) *Create*: Creating an actor from a behavior description and a set of parameters.
- (2) *Send-to*: Sending a message to another actor.
- (3) *Become*: An actor replacing its own behavior by a new behavior.

State changes are specified by behavior replacement. The replacement mechanism allows one to aggregate changes and to avoid unnecessary control-flow dependences. Concurrent computations are visualized in terms of concurrent actor creations, simultaneous communication events, and behavior replacements. Each message may cause an object (actor) to modify its state, create new objects, and send new messages.

Concurrency control structures represent particular patterns of message passing. The actor primitives provide a low-level description of concurrent systems. High-level constructs are also needed for raising the granularity of descriptions and for encapsulating faults. The actor model is particularly suitable for multicompiler implementations.

**Parallelism in COOP** Three common patterns of parallelism have been found in the practice of COOP. First, *pipeline concurrency* involves the overlapped enumeration of successive solutions and concurrent testing of the solutions as they emerge from an evaluation pipeline.

Second, *divide-and-conquer concurrency* involves the concurrent elaboration of different subprograms and the combining of their solutions to produce a solution to the overall problem. In this case, there is no interaction between the procedures solving the subproblems. These two patterns are illustrated by the following examples taken from the paper by Agha (1990).



### Example 10.2 Concurrency in object-oriented programming (Gul Agha, 1990)

A prime-number generation pipeline is shown Fig. 10.3a. Integer numbers are generated and successively tested for divisibility by previously generated primes in a linear pipeline of primes. The circled numbers represent those being generated.

A number enters the pipeline from the left end and is eliminated if it is divisible by the prime number tested at a pipeline stage. All the numbers being forwarded to the right of a pipeline stage are those indivisible by all the prime numbers tested on the left of that stage.

Figure 10.3b shows the multiplication of a list of numbers (10, 7, -2, 3, 4, -11, -3) using a divide-and-conquer approach. The numbers are represented as leaves of a tree. The problem can be recursively subdivided into subproblems of multiplying two sublists, each of which is concurrently evaluated and the results multiplied at the upper node.

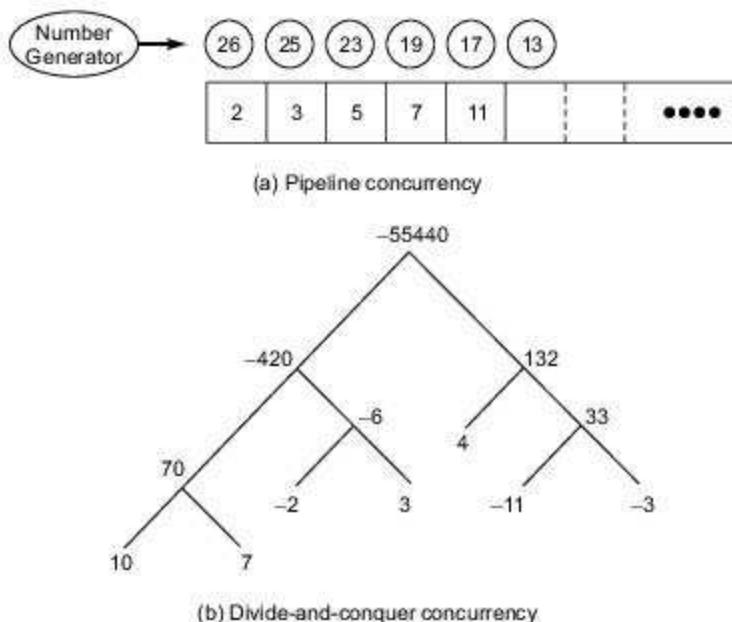


Fig. 10.3 Two concurrency types in object-oriented programming (Courtesy of G. Agha, Commun. ACM, September 1990)

A third pattern is called *cooperative problem solving*. A simple example is the dynamic path evaluation (computational objects) of many physical bodies (objects) under the mutual influence of gravitational fields. In this case, all objects must interact with each other; intermediate results are stored in objects and shared by passing messages between them. Interested readers may refer to the book on actors by Agha (1986).

Today companies such as IBM and Cray produce supercomputers with thousands of processors interconnected over high performance networks. At the same time, object-oriented programming and the message-passing model of inter-process communication have become established as standard paradigms of program design and development. Consider, for example, IBM's powerful Blue Gene line of supercomputers; the standard method of communication amongst node processes in these supercomputers is the Message-Passing Interface (MPI), customized for the architecture as needed. The Blue Gene line of supercomputers and MPI will both be discussed in Chapter 13.

#### 10.1.5 Functional and Logic Models

Two language-oriented programming models for parallel processing are described below. The first model is based on using functional programming languages such as pure *Lisp*, *SISAL*, and *Strand 88*. The second model

is based on logic programming languages such as *Concurrent Prolog* and *Parlog*. We reveal opportunities for parallelism in these two models and discuss their potential in AI applications.

**Functional Programming Model** A functional programming language emphasizes the *functionality* of a program and should not produce side effects after execution. There is no concept of storage, assignment, and branching in functional programs. In other words, the history of any computation performed prior to the evaluation of a functional expression should be irrelevant to the meaning of the expression.

The lack of side effects opens up much more opportunity for parallelism. Precedence restrictions occur only as a result of function application. The evaluation of a function produces the same value regardless of the order in which its arguments are evaluated. This implies that all arguments in a dynamically created structure of a functional program can be evaluated in parallel. All *single-assignment* and *dataflow languages* are functional in nature. This implies that functional programming models can be easily applied to data-driven multiprocessors. The functional model emphasizes fine-grain MIMD parallelism and is referentially transparent.

The majority of parallel computers designed to support the functional model were oriented toward Lisp, such as Multilisp developed at MIT. Other dataflow computers have been used to execute functional programs, including SISAL used in the Manchester dataflow machine.

**Logic Programming Model** Based on predicate logic, *logic programming* is suitable for knowledge processing dealing with large databases. This model adopts an implicit search strategy and supports parallelism in the logic inference process. A question is answered if the matching facts are found in the database. Two facts match if their predicates and associated arguments are the same. The process of matching and unification can be parallelized under certain conditions. Clauses in logic programming can be transformed into dataflow graphs. Parallel unification has been attempted on some dataflow computers built in Japan.

*Concurrent Prolog*, developed by Shapiro (1986), and *Parlog*, introduced by Clark (1987), are two parallel logic programming languages. Both languages can implement relational language features such as AND-parallel execution of conjunctive goals, IPC by shared variables, and OR-parallel reduction.

In *Parlog*, the resolution tree has one chain at AND levels, and OR levels are partially or fully generated. In *Concurrent Prolog*, the search strategy follows multiple paths or depth first. Stream parallelism is also possible in these logic programming systems.

Both functional and logic programming models have been used in artificial intelligence applications where parallel processing is very much in demand. Japan's *Fifth-Generation Computing System* (FGCS) project attempted to develop parallel logic systems for problem solving, machine inference, and intelligent human-machine interfacing.

In many ways, the FGCS project was a marriage of parallel processing hardware and AI software. The *Parallel Inference Machine* (PIM-I) in this project was designed to perform 10 million logic inferences per second (MLIPS). However, more recent AI applications tend to be based on other techniques, such as Bayesian inference.

## 10.2

## PARALLEL LANGUAGES AND COMPILERS

The environment for parallel computers is much more demanding than that for sequential computers. A programming environment is a collection of software tools and system software

support. Users should not have to spend a lot of time programming hardware details; they should focus instead on program parallelism using high-level abstractions. To break this hardware/software barrier, we need a parallel software environment which provides better tools for users to implement parallelism and to debug programs.

### 10.2.1 Language Features for Parallelism

Chang and Smith (1990) classified the language features for parallel programming into six categories according to functionality. These features are idealized for general-purpose applications. In practice, the real languages developed or accepted by the user community might have some or no features in some of the categories. Some of the features are identified with existing language/compiler development. The listed features set guidelines for developing a user-friendly programming environment.

**Optimization Features** These features are used for program restructuring and compilation directives in converting sequentially coded programs into parallel forms. The purpose is to match the software parallelism with the hardware parallelism in the target machine.

- Automated parallelizer—Examples are: Express C automated parallelizer and the Alliant FX Fortran compiler.
- Semiautomated parallelizer—Needs compiler directives or programmer's interaction, such as DINO.
- Interactive restructure support—Static analyzer, run-time statistics, dataflow graph, and code translator for restructuring Fortran code, such as the MIMDizer from Pacific Sierra.

**Availability Features** These are features that enhance the user-friendliness, make the language portable to a large class of parallel computers, and expand the applicability of software libraries.

- Scalability—The language is scalable to the number of processors available and independent of hardware topology.
- Compatibility—The language is compatible with an established sequential language.
- Portability—The language is portable to shared-memory multiprocessors, message-passing multicomputers, or both.

**Synchronization/Communication Features** Listed below are desirable language features for synchronization or for communication purposes:

- Single-assignment languages
- Shared variables (locks) for IPC
- Logically shared memory such as the tuple space in Linda
- Send/receive for message passing
- Rendezvous in Ada
- Remote procedure call
- Dataflow languages such as Id
- Barriers, mailbox, semaphores, monitors

**Control of Parallelism** Listed below are features involving control constructs for specifying parallelism in various forms:

- Coarse, medium, or fine grain

- Explicit versus implicit parallelism
- Global parallelism in the entire program
- Loop parallelism in iterations
- Task-split parallelism
- Shared task queue
- Divide-and-conquer paradigm
- Shared abstract data types
- Task dependency specification

**Data Parallelism Features** Data parallelism is used to specify how data are accessed and distributed in either SIMD or MIMD computers.

- Run-time automatic decomposition—Data are automatically distributed with no user intervention, as in Express.
- Mapping specification—Provides a facility for users to specify communication patterns or how data and processes are mapped onto the hardware, as in DINO.
- Virtual processor support—The compiler maps the virtual processors dynamically or statically onto the physical processors, as in PISCES 2 and DINO.
- Direct access to shared data—Shared data can be directly accessed without monitor control, as in Linda.
- SPMD (single program multiple data) support—SPMD programming, as in DINO and Hypertasking.

**Process Management Features** These features are needed to support the efficient creation of parallel processes, implementation of multithreading or multitasking, program partitioning and replication, and dynamic load balancing at run time.

- Dynamic process creation at run time
- Lightweight processes (threads)—Compared to UNIX (heavyweight) processes
- Replicated workers—Same program on every node with different data (SPMD mode)
- Partitioned networks—Each processor node might have more than one process and all processor nodes might run different processes
- Automatic load balancing—The workload is dynamically migrated among busy and idle nodes to achieve the same amount of work at various processor nodes

The above language features cannot be implemented without compiler support, operating system assistance, and integration with an existing environment. Software assets based on conventional languages form the basis for building an efficient parallel programming environment.

The optimization features emphasize code parallelization and vectorization at compile time. The availability features widen the application domains and make the languages machine-independent.

The synchronization features must be supported by efficient hardware and software mechanisms for their implementation. The control features often depend on tradeoffs among grain size, memory demand, and communication and scheduling overhead. Data parallelism exploits fine-grain computations on SIMD machines and medium-grain computations on MIMD computers.

The process management features are closely tied to the OS functions provided. Therefore, the languages, compilers, and OS must be developed jointly in an integrated fashion.

### 10.2.2 Parallel Language Constructs

Special language constructs and data array expressions are presented below for exploiting parallelism in programs. We first specify Fortran 90 array notations. Then we describe commonly used parallel constructs for program flow control.

**Fortran 90 Array Notations** A multidimensional data array is represented by an array name indexed by a sequence of subscript triplets, one for each dimension. Triplets for different dimensions are separated by commas. Examples are:

$$\begin{array}{l} e_1 : e_2 : e_3 \\ e_1 : e_2 \\ e_1 : * : e_3 \\ e_1 : * \\ e_1 \\ * \end{array} \quad (10.1)$$

where each  $e_i$  is an arithmetic expression that must produce a scalar integer value. The first expression  $e_1$  is a *lower bound*, the second  $e_2$  an *upper bound*, and the third  $e_3$  an *increment (stride)*. For example,  $B(1 : 4 : 3, 6 : 8 : 2, 3)$  represents four elements  $B(1, 6, 3)$ ,  $B(4, 6, 3)$ ,  $B(1, 8, 3)$ , and  $B(4, 8, 3)$  of a three-dimensional array.

When the third expression in a triplet is missing, a unit stride is assumed. The \* notation in the second expression indicates all elements in that dimension starting from  $e_1$ , or the entire dimension if  $e_1$  is also omitted. When both  $e_2$  and  $e_3$  are omitted, the  $e_1$  alone represents a single element in that dimension. For example,  $A(5)$  represents the fifth element in the array  $A(3 : 7 : 2)$ . This notation allows us to select array sections or particular array elements.

Array assignments are permitted under the following constraints: The array expression on the right must have the same shape and the same number of elements as the array on the left. For example, the assignment  $A(2 : 4, 5 : 8) = A(3 : 5, 1 : 4)$  is valid, but the assignment  $A(1 : 4, 1 : 3) = A(1 : 2, 1 : 6)$  is not valid, even though each side has 12 elements. When a scalar is assigned to an array, the value of the scalar is assigned to every element of the array. For instance, the statement  $B(3 : 4, 5) = 0$  sets  $B(3, 5)$  and  $B(4, 5)$  to 0.

**Parallel Flow Control** The conventional Fortran Do loop declares that all scalar instructions within the (Do, Enddo) pair are executed sequentially, and so are the successive iterations. To declare parallel activities, we use the (Doall, Endall) pair. All iterations in the Doall loop are totally independent of each other. This implies that they can be executed in parallel if there are sufficient processors to handle different iterations. However, the computations within each iteration are still executed serially in program order.

When the successive iterations of a loop depend on each other, we use the (Doacross, Endacross) pair to declare parallelism with loop-carried dependences. Synchronizations must be performed between the iterations that depend on each other. For example, dependence along the J-dimension exists in the following program. We use Doacross to declare parallelism along the I-dimension, but synchronization between iterations is required. The (Forall, Endall) and (Pardo, Parend) commands can be interpreted either as a Doall loop or as a Doacross loop.

```

Doacross I = 2, N
Do J = 2, N
 $S_I: \quad A(I, J) = (A(I, J - 1)) + A(I, J + 1))/2$ 
Enddo
Endacross

```

Another program construct is the (**Cobegin**, **Coend**) pair. All computations specified within the block could be executed in parallel. But parallel processes may be created with a slight time difference in real implementations. This is quite different from the semantics of the Doall loop or Doacross loop structures. Synchronizations among concurrent processes created within the pair are implied. Formally, the command

**Cobegin**

$P_1$   
 $P_2$   
 $\vdots$   
 $P_n$

**Coend**

causes processes  $P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n$  to start simultaneously and to proceed concurrently until they have all ended. The command (**Parbegin**, **Parend**) has equivalent meaning.

Finally, we introduce the **Fork** and **Join** commands in the following example. During the execution of a process P, we can use a **Fork Q** command to spawn a new process Q:



The **Join Q** command recombines the two processes into one process. Execution of Q is initialized when the **Fork Q** statement in P is executed. Programs P and Q are executed concurrently until either P executes the **Join Q** statement or Q terminates. Whichever one finishes first must wait for the other to complete execution, before they can be rejoined.

In a UNIX or LINUX environment, the **Fork-Join** statements provide a direct mechanism for dynamic process creation including multiple activations of the same process. The **Cobegin-Coend** statements provide a structured single-entry, single-exit control command which is not as dynamic as the **Fork-Join**. The (**Parbegin**, **Parend**) command is equivalent to the (**Cobegin**, **Coend**) command.

### 10.2.3 Optimizing Compilers for Parallelism

Because high-level languages are used almost exclusively to write programs today, compilers have become a necessity in modern computers. The role of a compiler is to remove the burden of program optimization and code generation from the programmer. A parallelizing compiler consists of the following three major phases: *flow analysis*, *optimizations*, and *code generation*, as depicted in Fig. 10.4.

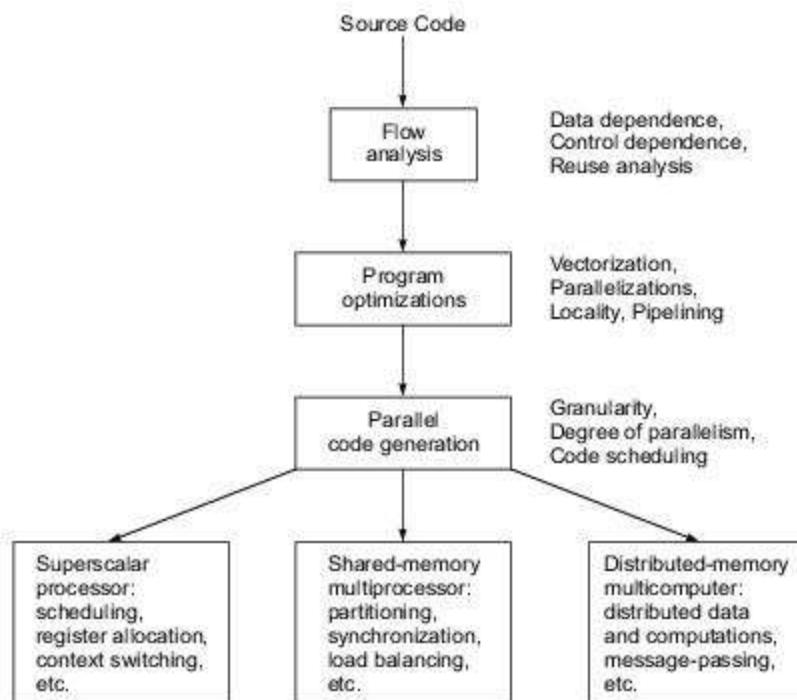


Fig. 10.4 Compilation phases in parallel code generation

**Flow Analysis** This phase reveals the program flow patterns in order to determine data and control dependences in the source code. We have discussed data dependence relations among scalar-type instructions in previous chapters. Scalar dependence analysis is extended below to structured data arrays or matrices. Depending on the machine structure, the granularities of parallelism to be exploited are quite different. Thus the flow analysis is conducted at different execution levels on different parallel computers.

Generally speaking, instruction-level parallelism is exploited in superscalar or VLSI processors; loop level in SIMD, vector, or systolic computers; and task level in multiprocessors, multicompilers, or a network of workstations. Of course, exceptions do exist. For example, fine-grain parallelism can in theory be pushed down to multicompilers with a globally shared address space. The flow analysis must also reveal code/data reuse and memory-access patterns.

**Program Optimizations** This refers to the transformation of user programs in order to explore the hardware capabilities as much as possible. Transformation can be conducted at the loop level, locality level, or prefetching level with the ultimate goal of reaching global optimization. The optimization often transforms a code into an equivalent but "better" form in the same representation language. These transformations should be machine-independent.

In reality, most transformations are constrained by the machine architecture. This is the main reason why many such compilers are machine-dependent. At the least, we want to design a compiler which can run on most machines with only minor modifications. One can also conduct certain transformations preceding the global

optimization. This may require a source-to-source optimization (sometimes carried out by a *precompiler*), which transforms the program from one high-level language to another before using a dedicated compiler for the second language on a target machine.

The ultimate goal of program optimization is to maximize the speed of code execution. This involves the minimization of code length and of memory accesses and the exploitation of parallelism in programs. The optimization techniques include vectorization using pipelined hardware and parallelization using multiple processors simultaneously. The compiler should be designed to reduce the running time with minimum resource binding. Other optimizations demand the expansion of routines or procedure integration with inlining. Both local and global optimizations are needed in most programs. Sometimes the optimization should be conducted at the algorithmic level and must involve the programmer.

Machine-dependent transformations are meant to achieve more efficient allocation of machine resources, such as processors, memory, registers, and functional units. Replacement of complex operations by cheaper ones is often practiced. Other optimizations include elimination of unnecessary branches or common expressions. Instruction scheduling can be used to eliminate pipeline or memory delays in executing consecutive instructions.

**Parallel Code Generation** Code generation usually involves transformation from one representation to another, called an *intermediate form*. A code model must be chosen as an intermediate form. Parallel code is even more demanding because parallel constructs must be included. Code generation is closely tied to the instruction scheduling policies used. Basic blocks linked by control-flow commands are often optimized to encourage a high degree of parallelism. Special data structures are needed to represent instruction blocks.

Parallel code generation is very different for different computer classes. For example, a superscalar processor may be software-scheduled or hardware-scheduled. How to optimize the register allocation on a RISC or superscalar processor, how to reduce the synchronization overhead when codes are partitioned for multiprocessor execution, and how to implement message-passing commands when codes/data are distributed (or replicated) on a multicomputer are added difficulties in parallel code generation. Compiler directives can be used to help generate parallel code when automated code generation cannot be implemented easily.

Two well-known exploratory optimizing compilers were developed over mid-1980: one was Parafrase at the University of Illinois, and the other was the PFC (Parallel Fortran Converter) at Rice University. These systems are briefly introduced below.

**Parafrase and Parafrase 2** This system, developed by David Kuck and coworkers at Illinois, is a source-to-source program restructurer (or compiler preprocessor) which transforms sequential Fortran 77 programs into forms suitable for vectorization or parallelization. Parafrase contains more than 100 program transformations which are encoded as *passes*. A *pass list* is used to identify the particular sequence of transformations needed for restructuring a given sequential program. The output of Parafrase is the converted concurrent program.

Different programs use different pass list and thus go through different sequences of transformations. The pass lists can be optimized for specific machine architectures and specific program constructs. Parafrase 2 was developed for handling programs written in C and Pascal, in addition to converting Fortran codes. Information on Parafrase can be found in [Kuck84] and on Parafrase 2 in [Polychronopoulos89].

Parafrase is retargetable to produce code for different classes of parallel/vector computers. The program transformed by Parafrase still needs a conventional optimizing compiler to produce the object code for the target machine. The Parafrase technology was later transferred to implement the KAP vectorizer by Kuck and Associates, Inc.

**The PFC and ParaScope** Ken Kennedy and his associates at Rice University developed PFC as an automatic source-to-source vectorizer. It translated Fortran 77 code into Fortran 90 code. A categorized dependence testing scheme was developed in PFC for revealing opportunities for loop vectorization. The PFC package was also extended to PFC+ for parallel code generation on shared-memory multiprocessors. PFC and PFC+ also supported the ParaScope programming environment.

PFC (Allen and Kennedy, 1984) performed syntax analysis, including the following four steps:

- (1) Interprocedural flow analysis using call graphs.
- (2) Standard transformations such as Do-loop normalization, subscript categorization, deletion of dead codes, etc.
- (3) Dependence analysis which applied the separability, GCD, and Banerjee tests jointly.
- (4) Vector code generation. PFC+ further implemented a parallel code generation algorithm (Callahan et al., 1988).

**Commercial Compilers** Optimizing compilers have also been developed in a number of commercial parallel/vector computers, including the Alliant FX/F Fortran compiler, the Convex parallelizing/vectorizing compiler, the Cray CFT compiler, the IBM vectorizing Fortran compiler, the VAST vectorizer by Pacific Sierra, Inc., and Intel iPSC-VX compiler. IBM also developed a PTRAN (Parallel Fortran) system based on control dependence with interprocedural analysis.

## 10.3

## DEPENDENCE ANALYSIS OF DATA ARRAYS

Dependence testing of successive iterations in multidimensional data arrays is described in this section. This provides a theoretical foundation for the development of vectorizing or parallelizing compilers.

### 10.3.1 Iteration Space and Dependence Analysis

Flow dependence, antidependence, and output dependence were defined for scalar data in Section 2.1.2. They can be summarized by the existence of dynamic references of  $R_1$  and  $R_2$ , if and only if either  $R_1$  or  $R_2$  is a write operation,  $R_1$  executes before  $R_2$ , or  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  both write the same variable. When the referenced object is a data array indexed by a multidimensional subscript, the dependence becomes very difficult to determine at compile time, since subscript values are not in general available.

Precise and efficient dependence tests are essential to the effectiveness of a parallelizing compiler. The process of computing all the data dependences in a program is called *dependence analysis*. The testing scheme presented below is based on the work of Goff, Kennedy, and Tseng (1991). These dependence tests were implemented at Rice University in PFC with the parallel ParaScope programming environment.

**Dependence Testing** Calculating data dependence for arrays is complicated by the fact that two array references may not access the same memory location. Dependence testing is the method used to determine whether dependences exist between two subscripted references to the same array in a loop nest. For the purpose of this explication, we ignore any control flow except for the loops themselves. Suppose we wish to test whether or not there exists a dependence from statement  $S_1$  to  $S_2$  in the following model loop nest of  $n$  levels, represented by  $n$  integer indices  $i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n$ .

```

Do  $i_1 = L_1, U_1$ 
Do  $i_2 = L_2, U_2$ 
...
Do  $i_n = L_n, U_n$ 
 $S_1 : \quad A(f_1(i_1, \dots, i_n), \dots, f_m(i_1, \dots, i_n)) = \dots$ 
 $S_2 : \quad \dots = A(g_1(i_1, \dots, i_n), \dots, g_m(i_1, \dots, i_n))$ 
Enddo
...
Enddo
Enddo

```

**Iteration Space** The  $n$ -dimensional discrete Cartesian space for  $n$ -deep loops is called an *iteration space*. The *iteration* is represented as coordinates in the iteration space. The following example clarifies the concept of *lexicographic order* for the successive iterations in a loop nest.



### Example 10.3 Lexicographic order for sequential execution of successive iterations in a loop structure (Monica Lam, 1992)

Consider a two-dimensional iteration space (Fig. 10.5) representing the following two-level loop nest in unit-increment steps:

```

Do  $i = 0, 5$ 
  Do  $j = i, 7$ 
     $f(i, j) = \dots$ 
  Enddo
Enddo

```

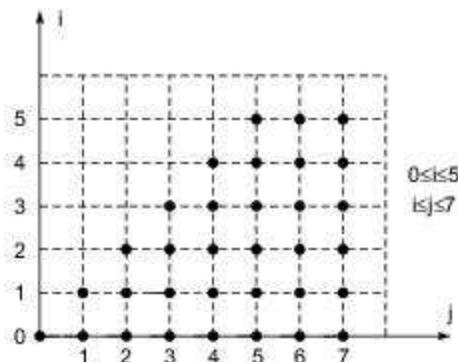


Fig. 10.5 A two-dimensional iteration space for the loop nest in Example 10.3

The following sequential order of iteration is a lexicographic order:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (0, 0), (0, 1), (0, 2), (0, 3), (0, 4), (0, 5), (0, 6), (0, 7) \\
 & (1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (1, 5), (1, 6), (1, 7) \\
 & (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4), (2, 5), (2, 6), (2, 7) \\
 & (3, 3), (3, 4), (3, 5), (3, 6), (3, 7) \\
 & (4, 4), (4, 5), (4, 6), (4, 7) \\
 & (5, 5), (5, 6), (5, 7)
 \end{aligned}$$

The lexicographic order is important to performing matrix transformation, which can be applied for loop optimization. We will apply lexicographic orders for loop parallelization in Section 10.5.

**Dependence Equations** Let  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  be vectors of  $n$  integer indices within the ranges of the upper and lower bounds of the  $n$  loops. There is a *dependence* from  $S_1$  to  $S_2$  if and only if there exist  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  such that  $\alpha$  is lexicographically less than or equal to  $\beta$  and the following system of *dependence equations* is satisfied:

$$f_i(\alpha) = g_i(\beta) \quad \forall i, 1 \leq i \leq m \quad (10.2)$$

Otherwise the two references are *independent*.

The dependence equations in Eq. 10.2 are linear expressions of the loop index variables. Dependence testing is thus equivalent to the problem of linear Diophantine equations, which is an NP-complete problem. *Exact tests* are dependence tests that will detect dependences if and only if they exist. In practice, exact tests are not performed due to the excessive overhead involved. Only approximate solutions (which are efficient to implement) are sought.

Parallelizing compilers have traditionally relied on two dependence tests to detect data dependences between pairs of array references: *Banerjee's inequalities* (Banerjee, 1988) and *GCD* tests (Wolfe, 1989). However, these tests are usually more general than necessary.

In Section 10.3.2, we present a practical testing algorithm developed by Rice University researchers led by Ken Kennedy. The test algorithm is based on partitioning the subscripts in a pair of array references. A suite of simple tests is developed to reduce the cost of performing dependence analysis, making it more practical for most compilers.

**Distance and Direction Vectors** Suppose there exists a data dependence for  $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$  and  $\beta = (\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n)$ . Then the *distance vector*  $\mathbf{D} = (D_1, \dots, D_n)$  is defined as  $\beta - \alpha$ . The *direction vector*  $\mathbf{d} = (d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n)$  of the dependence is defined by

$$d_i = \begin{cases} < & \text{if } \alpha_i < \beta_i \\ = & \text{if } \alpha_i = \beta_i \\ > & \text{if } \alpha_i > \beta_i \end{cases} \quad (10.3)$$

The elements are always displayed in order from left to right and from the outermost to the innermost loop in the nest.

For example, consider the following loop nest:

```

Do i = L1, U1
  Do j = L2, U2
    ...
  
```

```

Do  $k = L_3, U_3$ 
     $A(i+1, j, k-1) = A(i, j, k) + C$ 
Enddo
Enddo
Enddo

```

The distance and direction vectors for the dependence between iterations along three dimensions of the array  $A$  are  $(1, 0, -1)$  and  $(<, =, >)$ , respectively. Since several different values of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  may satisfy the dependence equations, a set of distance and direction vectors may be needed to completely describe the dependence.

Direction vectors are useful for calculating the level of *loop-carried* dependences. A dependence is *carried* by the outermost loop for which the direction in the direction vector is not “ $=$ ”. For instance, the direction vector  $(<, =, >)$  for the dependence above shows the dependence is carried on the  $i$ -loop.

Carried dependences are important because they determine which loops cannot be executed in parallel without synchronization. Direction vectors are also useful in determining whether loop interchange is legal and profitable. Distance vectors are more precise versions of direction vectors that specify the actual distance in loop iterations between two accesses to the same memory location. They may be used to guide optimizations to exploit parallelism or the memory hierarchy.

### 10.3.2 Subscript Separability and Partitioning

Dependence testing thus has two goals. It tries to disprove the dependence between pairs of subscripted references to the same array variable. If dependences exist, it tries to characterize them in some manner, usually as a minimum complete set of distance and direction vectors. Dependence testing must also be *conservative* and *assume the existence of any dependence it cannot disprove*. Otherwise the validity of any optimizations based on dependence information is not guaranteed.

**Subscript Categories** The term *subscript* refers to one of the subscripted positions in a pair of array references, i.e. the pair of subscripts in some dimension of the two array references. When testing for dependence, we classify subscript positions by the total number of distinct loop indices they contain.

A subscript is said to be *zero index variable* (ZIV) if the subscript position contains no index in either reference. A subscript is said to be *single index variable* (SIV) if only one index occurs in that position. Any subscript with more than one index is said to be *multiple index variable* (MIV).



### Example 10.4 Subscript types in a loop computation

Consider the following loop nest of three levels, identified by indices  $i, j$ , and  $k$ .

```

Do  $i_1 = L_1, U_1$ 
    Do  $j = L_2, U_2$ 
        Do  $k = L_n, U_n$ 

```

```
A(5, i + 1, j) = A(N, i, k) + C  
Enddo  
Enddo  
Enddo
```

When testing for a flow dependence between the two references to  $A$  in the code, the first subscript is ZIV because 5 and  $N$  are both constants, the second is SIV because only index  $i$  appears in this dimension, and the third is MIV because both indices  $j$  and  $k$  appear in the third dimension. For simplicity, we have ignored the output dependence in this example.

**Subscript Separability** When testing multidimensional arrays, we say that a subscript position is *separable* if its indices do not occur in the other subscripts. If two different subscripts contain the same index, we say they are *coupled*. Separability is important because multidimensional array references can cause imprecision in dependence testing.

If all the subscripts are separable, we may compute the direction vector for each subscript independently and merge the direction vectors on a positional basis with full precision. The following examples clarify these concepts.



### Example 10.5 From separability to direction vector and distance vector

Consider the following loop nest:

```
Do i1 = L1, U1  
  Do j = L2, U2  
    Do k = L3, U3  
      A(i, j, j) = A(i, j, k) + C  
    Enddo  
  Enddo  
Enddo
```

The first subscript is separable because index  $i$  does not appear in the other dimensions, but the second and third are coupled because they both contain the index  $j$ . ZIV subscripts are separable because they contain no indices.

Consider another loop nest:

```
Do i1 = L1, U1  
  Do j = L2, U2  
    Do k = Ln, Un  
      A(i + 1, j, k - 1) = A(i, j, k) + C  
    Enddo  
  Enddo  
Enddo
```

The leftmost direction in the direction vector is determined by testing the first subscript, the middle direction by testing the second subscript, and the rightmost direction by testing the third subscript.

The resulting direction vector ( $<$ ,  $=$ ,  $>$ ) is precise. The same approach applied to distances allows us to calculate the exact distance vector  $(1, 0, -1)$ .

**Subscript Partitioning** We need to classify all the subscripts in a pair of array references as separable or as part of some minimal coupled group. A coupled group is *minimal* if it cannot be partitioned into two nonempty subgroups with distinct sets of indices. Once a partition is achieved, each separable subscript and each coupled group has completely disjoint sets of indices.

Each partition may then be tested in isolation and the resulting distance or direction vectors merged without any loss of precision. Since each variable and coupled subscript group contains a unique subset of indices, a merge may be thought of as a Cartesian product.

In the following loop nest, the first subscript yields the direction vector ( $<$ ) for the  $i$ -loop. The second subscript yields the direction vector ( $=$ ) for the  $j$ -loop. The resulting Cartesian product is the single vector  $(<, =)$ .

```

Do  $i = L_1, U_1$ 
    Do  $j = L_2, U_2$ 
         $A(i+1, j) = A(i, j) + C$ 
    Enddo
Enddo
```

Consider another loop nest where the first subscript yields the direction vector ( $<$ ) for the  $i$ -loop.

```

Do  $i = L_1, U_1$ 
    Do  $j = L_2, U_2$ 
         $A(i+1, 5) = A(i, N) + C$ 
    Enddo
Enddo
```

Since  $j$  does not appear in any subscript, we must assume the full set of direction vectors for the  $j$ -loop:  $\{(<), (=), (>)\}$ . Thus a merge yields the following set of direction vectors for both dimensions:

$$\{(<, <), (<, =), (<, >)\}$$

### 10.3.3 Categorized Dependence Tests

The goal of dependence testing is to construct the complete set of distance and direction vectors representing potential dependences between an arbitrary pair of subscripted references to the same array variable. Since distance vectors may be treated as precise direction vectors, we will simply refer to direction vectors.

**The Testing Algorithm** The following procedure is for dependence testing based on a partitioning approach, which can isolate unrelated indices and localize the computation involved and thus is easier to implement.

- (1) Partition the subscripts into separable and minimal coupled groups using the following algorithm:

**Subscript Partitioning Algorithm (Goff, Kennedy, and Tseng, 1991)**

**Input:** A pair of  $m$ -dimensional array references containing subscripts  $S_1 \dots S_m$  enclosed in  $n$  loops with indices  $I_1 \dots I_n$ .

**Output:** A set of partitions  $P_1 \dots P_{n'}$ ,  $n' \leq n$ , each containing a separable or minimal coupled group.

**For** each  $i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n$  **Do**

$$P_i \leftarrow \{S_i\}$$

**Endfor**

**For** each index  $I_i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n$  **Do**

$$k \leftarrow \{\text{none}\}$$

**For** each remaining partition  $P_j$  **Do**

**if**  $\exists S_1 \in P_j$  such that  $S_1$  contains  $I_i$ , **then**

**if**  $k = \{\text{none}\}$  **then**

$$k \leftarrow j$$

**else**

$$P_k \leftarrow P_k \cup P_j$$

Discard  $P_j$

**Endif**

**Endif**

**Endfor**

**Endfor**

- (2) Label each subscript as ZIV, SIY, or MIV.
- (3) For each separable subscript, apply the appropriate single subscript test (ZIV, SIY, MIV) based on the complexity of the subscript. This will produce independence or direction vectors for the indices occurring in that subscript.
- (4) For each coupled group, apply a multiple subscript test to produce a set of direction vectors for the indices occurring within that group.
- (5) If any test yields independence, no dependences exist.
- (6) Otherwise merge all the direction vectors computed in the previous steps into a single set of direction vectors for the two references.

**Test Categories** Dependence test results for ZIV subscripts are treated specially. If a ZIV subscript proves independence, the dependence test algorithm halts immediately. If independence is not proved, the ZIV test does not produce direction vectors, and so no merge is necessary. For the implementation of the above algorithm, we have specified how to perform the single subscript tests (ZIV, SIY, MIV) separately. We consider below the trivial case of ZIV first, then SIY, and finally MIV which is more involved.

We first consider dependence tests for single separable subscripts. All tests presented assume that the subscript being tested contains expressions that are linear in the loop index variables. A subscript expression is linear if it has the form  $a_1 i_1 + a_2 i_2 + \dots + a_n i_n + e$ , where  $i_k$  is the index for the loop at nesting level  $k$ ; all  $a_k$ ,  $1 \leq k \leq n$ , are integer constants; and  $e$  is an expression possibly containing loop-invariant symbolic expressions.

**The ZIV Test** The ZIV test is a dependence test performed on two loop-invariant expressions. If the system determines that the two expressions cannot be equal, it has proved independence. Otherwise the subscript does not contribute any direction vectors and may be ignored. The ZIV test can be easily extended for symbolic expressions. Simply form the expression representing the difference between the two subscript expressions. If the difference simplifies to a nonzero constant, we have proved independence.

**The SIV Test** An SIV subscript for index  $i$  is said to be *strong* if it has the form  $(ai + c_1, ai' + c_2)$ , i.e. if it is linear and the coefficients of the two occurrences of the index  $i$  are constant and equal. For strong SIV subscripts, define the *dependence distance* as

$$d = i' - i = \frac{c_1 - c_2}{a} \quad (10.4)$$

A dependence exists if and only if  $d$  is an integer and  $|d| \leq U - L$ , where  $U$  and  $L$  are the loop upper and lower bounds. For dependences that do exist, the *dependence direction* is given by

$$\text{Direction} = \begin{cases} < & \text{if } d > 0 \\ = & \text{if } d = 0 \\ > & \text{if } d < 0 \end{cases} \quad (10.5)$$

The strong SIV test is thus an exact test that can be implemented very efficiently in a few operations. A bounded iteration space is shown in Fig. 10.6a. The case of a strong SIV test is shown in Fig. 10.6b.

Another advantage of the strong SIV test is that it can be easily extended to handle loop-invariant symbolic expressions. The trick is to first evaluate the dependence distance  $d$  symbolically. If the result is a constant, then the test may be performed as above. Otherwise calculate the difference between the loop bounds and compare the result with  $d$  symbolically.

A *weak* SIV subscript has the form  $(a_1 i + c_1, a_2 i' + c_2)$ , where the coefficients of the two occurrences of index  $i$  have different constant values. As stated previously, weak SIV subscripts may be solved using the single-index exact test. However, we also find it helpful to view the problem geometrically, where the dependence equation

$$a_1 i + c_1 = a_2 i' + c_2$$

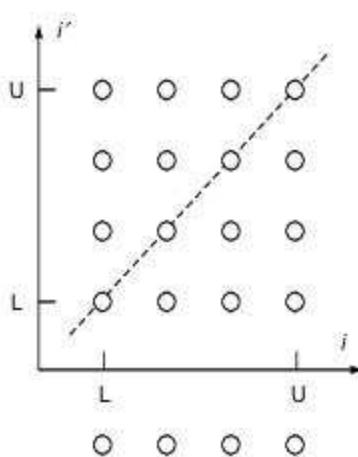
describes a line in the two-dimensional plane with  $i$  and  $i'$  as axes.

The weak SIV test can then be formulated as determining whether the line derived from the dependence equation intersects with any integer points in the space bounded by the loop upper and lower bounds, as shown in Fig. 10.5.

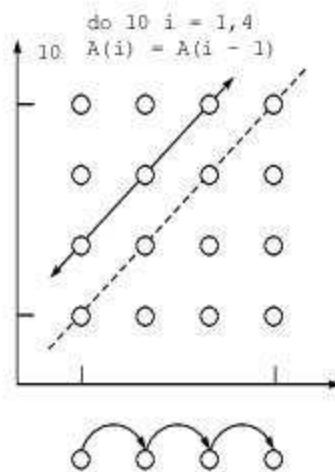
Two special cases should be studied separately.

**Weak-Zero SIV Test** The case in which  $a_1 = 0$  or  $a_2 = 0$  is called a *weak-zero* SIV subscript, as illustrated in Fig. 10.6c. If  $a_2 = 0$ , the dependence equation reduces to

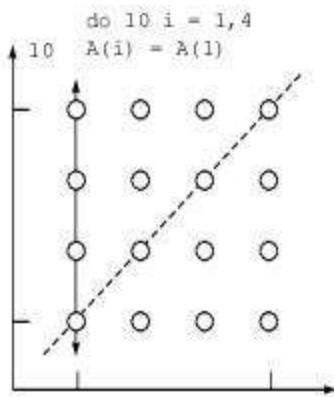
$$i = \frac{c_2 - c_1}{a_1}$$



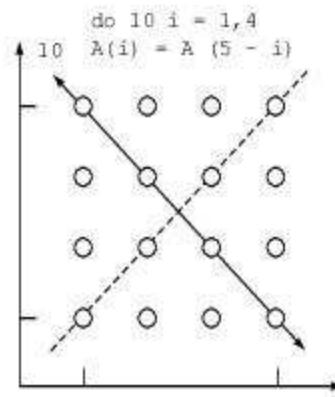
(a) Bounded iteration space



(b) Strong SIV



(c) Weak-zero SIV



(d) Weak-crossing SIV

**Fig. 10.6** Geometric view of SIV tests in four cases (Courtesy of Goff et al, 1991; reprinted from ACM SIGPLAN Conf. Programming Language Design and Implementation, Toronto, Canada, 1991)

It is only necessary to check that the resulting value for  $i$  is an integer and within the loop bounds. A similar check applies when  $a_i = 0$ .

The weak-zero SIV test finds dependences caused by a particular iteration  $i$ . In scientific codes,  $i$  is usually the first or last iteration of the loop, eliminating one possible direction vector for the dependence.

Consider the following loop for a strong SIV test:

```
Do i = 1, N
    A(i + 2N) = A(i + N)
Enddo
```

The strong SIV test can evaluate the dependence distance  $d$  as  $2N - N$ , which simplifies to  $N$ . This is compared with the loop bounds symbolically, proving independence since  $N > N - 1$ .

Consider the following simplified loop in the program *tomcatv* from the SPEC benchmark suite (Uniejewski, 1989):

```
Do i = 1, N
    Y(i, N) = Y(i, N) + Y(N, N)
Enddo
```

The weak-zero SIV test can determine that the use of  $Y(i, N)$  causes a loop-carried true dependence from the first iteration to all the other iterations. Similarly, with aid from symbolic analysis, the weak-zero SIV test can discover that the use of  $Y(N, N)$  causes a loop-carried antidependence from all iterations to the last iteration. By identifying the first and last iterations as the only cause of dependences, the weak-zero SIV test advises the user or compiler to peel the first and last iterations of the loop, resulting in the following parallel loop:

```
Y(1, N) = Y(1, N) + Y(N, N)
Do i = 2, N - 1
    Y(i, N) = Y(i, N) + Y(N, N)
Enddo
Y(N, N) = Y(N, N) + Y(N, N)
```

**Weak-Crossing SIV Test** All subscripts where  $a_2 = -a_1$  are *weak-crossing SIV*. These subscripts typically occur as part of Cholesky decomposition, also illustrated in Fig. 10.6d. In these cases we set  $i = i'$  and derive the dependence equation

$$i = \frac{c_2 - c_1}{2a_1}$$

This corresponds to the intersection of the dependence equation with the line  $i = i'$ . To determine whether dependences exist, we simply need to check that the resulting value  $i$  is within the loop bounds and is either an integer or has a noninteger part equal to  $1/2$ .

Weak-crossing SIV subscripts cause *crossing* dependences, loop-carried dependences whose end points all cross iteration  $i$ . These dependences may be eliminated using a *loop-splitting* transformation (Kennedy et al., 1991) as described below.

Consider the following loop from the Callahan-Dongarra-Levine vector test (Callahan et al., 1988):

```
Do i = 1, N
    A(i) = A(N - i + 1) + C
Enddo
```

The weak-crossing SIV test determines that dependences exist between the definition and use of  $A$  and that they all cross iteration  $(N + 1)/2$ . Splitting the loop at that iteration results in two parallel loops:

```
Do i = 1, (N + 1)/2
    A(i) = A(N - i + 1) + C
Enddo
Do i = (N + 1)/2 + 1, N
    A(i) = A(N - i + 1) + C
Enddo
```

**The MIV Tests** SIV tests can be extended to handle complex iteration spaces where loop bounds may be functions of other loop indices, e.g. triangular or trapezoidal loops. We need to compute the minimum and maximum loop bounds for each loop index.

Starting at the outermost loop nest and working inward, we replace each index in a loop upper bound with its maximum value (or minimal if it is a negative term). We do the opposite in the lower bound, replacing each index with its minimal value (or maximal if it is a negative term).

We evaluate the resulting expressions to calculate the minimal and maximal values for the loop index and then repeat for the next inner loop. This algorithm returns the maximal range for each index, all that is needed for SIV tests.

The Banerjee-GCD test may be employed to construct all legal direction vectors for linear subscripts containing multiple indices. In most cases the test can also determine the minimal dependence distance for the carrier loop.

A special case of MIV subscripts, called RDIV (restricted double-index variable) subscripts, have the form  $(a_1 i + c_1, a_2 j + c_2)$ . They are similar to SIV subscripts except that  $i$  and  $j$  are distinct indices. By observing different loop bounds for  $i$  and  $j$ , SIV tests may also be extended to test RDIV subscripts exactly.

A large body of work was performed in the field of dependence testing at Rice University, the University of Illinois, and Oregon Graduate Institute. What was described above is only one of the many dependence testing algorithms proposed. Experimental results are reported from these research centers. Readers are advised to read published material on Banerjee's test and the GCD test, which provide other inexact and conservative solutions to the problem.

The development of a parallelizing compiler is limited by the difficulty of having to deal with many nonperfectly nested loops. The lack of dataflow information is often the ultimate limit on automatic compilation of parallel code.

## 10.4

## CODE OPTIMIZATION AND SCHEDULING

In this section, we describe the roles of compilers in code optimization and code generation for parallel computers. In no case can one expect production of a true optimal code which matches the hardware behavior perfectly. Compilation is a software technique which transforms the source program to generate better object code, which can reduce the running time and memory requirement. On a parallel computer, program optimization often demands an effort from both the programmer and the compiler.

### 10.4.1 Scalar Optimization with Basic Blocks

Instruction scheduling is often supported by both compiler techniques and dynamic scheduling hardware. In order to exploit *instruction-level parallelism* (ILP), we need to optimize the code generation and scheduling process under both machine and program constraints. Machine constraints are caused by mutually exclusive

use of functional units, registers, data paths, and memory. Program constraints are caused by data and control dependences. Some processors, like those with VLIW architecture, explicitly specify ILP in their instructions. Others may use hardware interlock, out-of-order execution, or speculative execution. Even machines with dynamic scheduling hardware can benefit from compiler scheduling techniques.

There are two alternative approaches to supporting instruction scheduling. One is to provide an additional set of nontrapping instructions so that the compiler can perform aggressive *static instruction scheduling*. This approach requires an extension of the instruction set of existing processors. The second approach is to support out-of-order execution in the micro-architecture so that the hardware can perform aggressive *dynamic instruction scheduling*. This approach usually does not require the instruction set to be modified but requires complex hardware support.

In general, instruction scheduling methods ensure that control dependences, data dependences, and resource limitations are properly handled during concurrent execution. The goal is to produce a schedule that minimizes the execution time or the memory demand, in addition to enforcing correctness of execution. Static scheduling at compile time requires intelligent compilation support, whereas dynamic scheduling at run time requires sophisticated hardware support. In practice, dynamic scheduling can be assisted by static scheduling in improving performance.

**Precedence Constraints** Speculative execution requires the use of program profiling to estimate effectiveness. Speculative exceptions must not terminate execution. In other words, precise exception handling is desired to alleviate the control dependence problem. The data dependence problem involves instruction ordering and register allocation issues.

If a flow dependence is detected, the *write* must proceed ahead of the *read* operation involved. Similarly, output dependence produces different results if two *writes* to the same location are executed in a different order. Antidependence enforces a *read* to be ahead of the *write* operation involved. We need to analyze the memory variables. Scalar data dependence is much easier to detect. Dependence among arrays of data elements is much more involved, as shown in Section 10.3. Other difficulties lie in interprocedural analysis, pointer analysis, and register allocations interacting with code scheduling.

**Basic Block Scheduling** A *basic block* (or just a *block*) is a sequence of statements satisfying two properties: (1) No statement but the first can be reached from outside the block; i.e. there are no branches into the middle of the block. (2) All statements are executed consecutively if the first one is. Therefore, no branches out or halts are allowed until the end of the block. All blocks are required to be *maximal* in the sense that they cannot be extended up or down without violating these properties.

For local optimization only, an *extended basic block* is defined as a sequence of statements in which the first statement is the only entry point. Thus an extended block may have branches out in the middle of the code but no branches into it. The basic steps for constructing basic blocks are summarized below:

- (1) Find the *leaders*, which are the first statements in a block. Leaders are identified as being one or more of the following:
  - (a) The first statement of the code.
  - (b) The target of a conditional or unconditional branch.
  - (c) A statement following a conditional branch.
- (2) For a leader, a basic block consists of the leader and all statements following up to but excluding the next leader. Note that the beginning of inaccessible code (dead code) is not considered a leader. In fact, dead code should be eliminated.



## Example 10.6 Basic block construction in a bubble sort program (S. Graham, J. L. Hennessy, and J. D. Ullman, 1992)

A bubble sort program sorts an array  $A[j]$  with statically allocated storage. Each element of  $A$  requires 4 bytes of byte-addressable memory. The elements of  $A[j]$  are numbered  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , where  $n$  is a variable. To be specific,  $A[j]$  is stored in location  $\text{addr}(A) + 4 * (j - 1)$ , where  $\text{addr}(A)$  produces the starting address of the array  $A$ . The following source code is for bubble sort:

```
For i := n - 1 downto 1 do
    For j := 1 to i do
        If A[j] > A[j + 1] then
            Begin
                temp := A[j]
                A[j] := A[j + 1]
                A[j + 1] := temp
            End
        End of j-loop
    End of i-loop
```

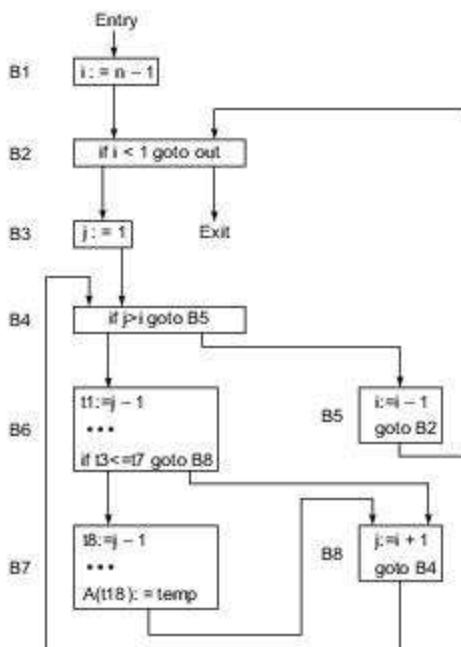
If a three-address machine is assumed, the above code is translated into the following assembly language code. Variable names on the right of := stand for values, and on the left for addresses.

```
i := n - 1
s5: if i < 1 goto s1
      j := 1
s4: if j > i goto s2
      t1 := j - 1
      t2 := 4 * t1
      t3 := A[t2]           /A[j]/
      t4 := j + 1
      t5 := t4 - 1
      t6 := 4 * t5
      t7 := A[t6]           /A[j+1]/
      if t3 <= t7 goto s3  /if A[j] > A[j+1] then begin .../
      t8 := j - 1
      t9 := 4 * t8
      temp := A[t9]         / temp := A[j]/
      t10 := j + 1
      t11 := t10 - 1
```

```

t12 := 4 * t11
t13 := A[t12]           /A[j+1]/
t14 := j - 1
t15 := 4 * t14
A[t15] := t13           /A[j] := A[j+1]/
t16 := j + 1
t17 := t16 - 1
t18 := 4 * t17
A[t18] := temp          /A[j+1] := temp/
s3:   j := j + 1
      goto s4
s2:   i := i - 1
      goto s5
s1:   halt
    
```

The above 31 statements are divided into 8 basic blocks as shown in Fig. 10.7. A program flow graph is drawn to show the precedence relationship among the basic blocks. Each node in the flow graph corresponding to one basic block may contain different numbers of statements. The entry node is B1, and the exit node is B2.



**Fig. 10.7** A flow graph showing the precedence relationship among basic blocks in the bubble sort program (Courtesy of S. Graham, J. L. Hennessy, and J. D. Ullman. Course on Code Optimization and Code Generation, Western Institute of Computer Science, Stanford University, 1992)

While a program is being compiled, basic block records should keep pointers to predecessors and successors. Storage reclamation techniques or linked list structures can be used to represent blocks. Sources of program optimization include algebraic optimization to eliminate redundant operations, and other optimizations conducted within the basic blocks locally or on a global basis.

#### 10.4.2 Local and Global Optimizations

We first describe local code optimization within basic blocks. Then we study global optimizations among basic blocks. Both intraprocedural and interprocedural optimizations are discussed. Finally, we identify some machine-dependent optimizations. Readers will realize the limitations and potentials of these code optimization methods.

##### **Local Optimizations**

These are code optimizations performed only within basic blocks. The information needed for optimization is gathered entirely from a single basic block, not from an extended basic block. No control-flow information between blocks is considered. Listed below are some local optimizations often performed:

(1) *Local Common Subexpression Elimination* If a subexpression is to be evaluated more than once within a single block, it can be replaced by a single evaluation. For Example 10.6, in block B7, t9 and t15 each compute  $4 * (j - 1)$ , and t12 and t18 each compute  $4 * j$ . Replacing t15 by t9, and t18 by t12, we obtain the following revised code for B7, which is shorter to execute.

```
t8 := j - 1  
t9 := 4 * t8  
temp := A[t9]  
t12 := 4 * j  
t13 := A[t12]  
A[t9] := t13  
A[t12] := temp
```

(2) *Local Constant Folding or Propagation* Sometimes some constants used in instructions can be computed at compile time. This often takes place in the initialization blocks. The compile-time generated constants are then folded to eliminate unnecessary calculations at run time. In other cases, a local copy may be propagated to eliminate unnecessary calculations.

(3) *Algebraic Optimization to Simplify Expressions* For example, one can replace the *identity statement*  $A := B + 0$  or  $A := B * 1$  by  $A := B$  and later even replace references to this  $A$  by references to  $B$ . Or one can use the *commutative law* to combine expressions  $C := A + B$  and  $D := B + A$ . The *associative* and *distributive laws* can also be applied on equal-priority operators, such as replacing  $(a - b) + c$  by  $a - (b - c)$  if  $(b - c)$  has already been evaluated earlier.

(4) *Instruction Reordering* Code reordering is often practiced to maximize the pipeline utilization or to enable overlapped memory accesses. Some orders yield better code than others. Reordered instructions lead to better scheduling, preventing pipeline or memory delays. In the following example, instruction I3 may be delayed in memory accesses:

|     |      |                      |
|-----|------|----------------------|
| I1: | Load | R1, A                |
| I2: | Load | R2, B                |
| I3: | Add  | R2, R1, R2 – delayed |
| I4: | Load | R3, C                |

With reordering, the instruction I3 may experience no delay:

|     |      |                          |
|-----|------|--------------------------|
| I1: | Load | R1, A                    |
| I2: | Load | R2, B                    |
| I4: | Load | R3, C                    |
| I3: | Add  | R2, R1, R2 – not delayed |

(5) *Elimination of Dead Code or Unary Operators* Code segments or even basic blocks which are not accessible or will never be referenced can be eliminated to save compile time, run time, and space requirements.

Unary operators, such as arithmetic negation and logical complement, can often be eliminated by applying algebraic laws, such as  $x + (-y) = x - y$ ,  $-(x - y) = y - x$ ,  $(-x) * (-y) = x * y$ ,  $\text{Not}(\text{Not } A) = A$ , etc. Boolean expression evaluation can often be optimized after some form of minimization.

**Global Optimizations** These are code optimizations performed across basic block boundaries. Control-flow information among basic blocks is needed. John Hennessy (1992) has classified intraprocedural global optimizations into three types:

(1) *Global Versions of Local Optimizations* These include global common subexpression elimination, global constant propagation, dead code elimination, etc. The following example further optimizes the code in Example 10.6 if some global optimizations are performed.



### Example 10.7 Global optimizations in the bubble sort program (S. Graham, J. L. Hennessy, and J. D. Ullman, 1992)

In Example 10.6, block B7 needs to compute  $A[t9] = A[4 * (j - 1)]$ , which was computed in block B6. To reach B7, B6 must be executed first and the value of  $j$  never changes between the two nodes. Thus the first three statements of B7 can be replaced by  $\text{temp} := t3$ . Similarly,  $t9$  computes the same value as  $t2$ ,  $t12$  computes the same value as  $t6$ , and  $t13$  computes the same value as  $t7$ . The entire block B7 may be replaced by

```
temp := t3
A[t2] := t7
A[t6] := temp
```

and, substituting for  $\text{temp}$  by

```
A[t2] := t7
A[t6] := t3
```

The revised program, after both local and global optimizations, is obtained as follows:

```
B1: i := n - 1
B2: If i < 1 goto out
B3: j := 1
B4: If j > i goto B5
B6: t1 := j - 1
     t2 := 4 * t1
     t3 := A[t2]           /A[j]/
     t6 := 4 * j
     t7 := A[t6]           /A[j+1]/
     If t3 <= t7 goto B8
B7: A[t2] := t7
     A[t6] := t3
B8: j := j + 1
     goto B4
B5: i := i - 1
     goto B2
out:
```

(2) *Loop Optimizations* These include various loop transformations to be described in subsequent sections for the purpose of vectorization, parallelization, or both. Sometimes *code motion* and *induction variable elimination* can simplify loop structures. For example, one can replace the calculation of an induction variable involving a multiplication by an addition to its former value. The addition takes less time to perform and thus results in a shorter execution time.

In other cases, loop-invariant variables or codes can be moved out of the loop to simplify the loop nest. One can also lower the loop control overhead using loop unrolling to reduce iteration or loop fusion to merge loops. Loops can be exchanged to facilitate pipelining of long vectors. Many loop optimization examples will be given in subsequent sections.

(3) *Control-flow Optimization* These are other global optimizations dealing with control structure but not directly with loops. A good example is *code hoisting*, which eliminates copies of identical code on parallel paths in a flow graph. This can save space significantly, but would have no impact on execution time.

Interprocedural global optimizations are much more difficult to perform due to sensitivity and global dependence relationships. Sometimes, procedure integration can be performed to replace a call to a procedure by an instantiation of the procedure body. This may also trigger the discovery of other optimization opportunities. Interprocedure dependence analysis must be performed in order to reveal these opportunities.

**Machine-Dependent Optimizations** With a finite number of registers, memory cells, and functional units in a machine, the efficient allocation of machine resources affects both space and time optimization of programs. For example, *strength reduction* replaces complex operations by cheaper operations, such as replacing  $2a$  by  $a + a$ ,  $a^2$  by  $a * a$ , and  $\text{length}(S1 + S2)$  by  $\text{length}(S1) + \text{length}(S2)$ . We will address register and memory allocation problems in code generation methods in the next section.

Other flow control optimizations can be conducted at the machine level. Good examples include the elimination of unnecessary branches, the replacement of instruction sequences by simpler equivalent code sequences, instruction reordering and multiple instruction issues in superscalar processors. Machine-level parallelism is usually exploited at the fine-grain instruction level. System-level parallelism is usually exploited in coarse-grain computations.

#### 10.4.3 Vectorization and Parallelization Methods

Besides scalar optimizations, we need to perform vector and/or parallel optimizations. The purpose is to improve the performance of programs that manipulate large data arrays or can be partitioned for parallel execution. *Vectorization* is the process of converting scalar looping operations into equivalent vector instruction execution. *Parallelization* aims at converting sequential code into parallel form, which can enable parallel execution by multiple processors.

An optimizing compiler that does vectorization automatically or semiautomatically with directives from programmers is called a *vectorizing compiler* or simply a *vectorizer*. Similarly, a *parallelizing compiler* should be designed to generate parallel code from sequential code automatically or semiautomatically. We introduce below various methods suggested for vectorization and parallelization. Vector hardware must be provided to speed up vector operations. Multiprocessors or multicomputers must be used to execute parallelized codes. Inhibitors of vectorization and parallelization are also identified in some program constructs in order to avoid unrewarding attempts.

**Vectorization Methods** We describe below several basic methods for vectorization. Many other methods can be found in the extensive literature available on the subject. We use Fortran 90 notation; for example, successive iterations in the following loop are totally independent:

```
Do 20 I = 8, 120, 2  
20      A(I) = B(I+3) + C(I+1)
```

This scalar loop can be converted into one *vector-add* instruction defined by the following array assignment:

$$A(8:120:2) = B(11:123:2) + C(9:121:2)$$

(I) *Use of Temporary Storage* Consider the following Do loop:

```
Do 20 I = 1, N  
      A(I) = B(I) + C(I)  
20      B(I) = 2 * A(I+1)
```

This loop represents the following sequence of scalar operations:

$$\begin{aligned} A(1) &= B(1) + C(1) \\ B(1) &= 2 * A(2) \\ A(2) &= B(2) + C(2) \\ B(2) &= 2 * A(3) \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

In order to enable pipelined execution by vector hardware, we need to introduce a temporary array TEMP(1:N) to produce the following vector code:

```
TEMP(1:N) = A(2:N+1)
A(1:N) = B(1:N) + C(1:N)
B(1:N) = 2 * TEMP(1:N)
```

Without the TEMP array, the second array assignment  $B(1:N)$  may use the modified  $A(1:N)$  array which was not intended in the original code.

(2) *Loop Interchanging* Vectorization is often performed in the inner loop rather than in the outer loop. Sometimes we interchange the loops to enable the vectorization. The general rules for loop interchanges are to make the most profitable vectorizable loop the innermost loop, to make the most profitable parallelizable loop the outermost loop, to enable memory accesses to consecutive elements in arrays, and to bring a loop with longer vector length (iteration count) to the innermost loop for vectorization. The profitability is defined by improvement in execution time. Consider the following loop nest with two levels:

```
Do 20 I = 2, N
    Do 10 J = 2, N
        Sj:      A(I, J) = (A(I, J - 1) + A(I, J + 1))/2
    10     Continue
    20     Continue
```

(10.6)

The statement  $S_j$  is both flow-dependent and antidependent on itself with the direction vectors  $(=, <)$  and  $(=, >)$ , or more precisely the distance vectors  $(0, -1)$  and  $(0, 1)$ , respectively. This implies that the loop cannot be vectorized along the  $J$ -dimension. Therefore, we have to interchange the two loops:

```
Do 20 J = 2, N
    Do 20 I = 2, N
        A(I, J) = (A(I, J - 1) + A(I, J + 1))/2
    20     Continue
```

Now, the inner loop ( $I$ -dimension) can be vectorized with the zero distance vector. The vectorized code is

```
Do 20 J = 2, N
    A(2:N, J) = (A(2:N, J - 1) + A(2:N, J + 1))/2
    20     Continue
```

In general, an innermost loop cannot be vectorized if forward dependence direction ( $<$ ) and backward dependence direction ( $>$ ) coexist. The  $(=)$  direction does not prevent vectorization.

(3) *Loop Distribution* Nested loops can be vectorized by distributing the outermost loop and vectorizing each of the resulting loops or loop nests.

```
Do 10 I = 1, N
    B(I, 1) = 0
    Do 20 J = 1, M
        A(I) = A(I) + B(I, J) * C(I, J)
    20     Continue
    D(I) = E(I) + A(I)
10     Continue
```

The I-loop is distributed to three copies, separated by the nested J-loop from the assignment to array B and D, and vectorized as follows:

```
B(1:N, 1) = 0 (a zero vector)
Do 30 I = 1, N
    A(I) = A(I) + B(I, 1:M) * C(I, 1:M)
```

30 Continue

```
D(I:N) = E(1:N) + A(1:N)
```

(4) *Vector Reduction* We have defined vector reduction instructions in Eqs. 8.6 and 8.7. A number of reductions are defined in Fortran 90. In general, a vector reduction produces a scalar value from one or two data arrays. Examples include the *sum*, *product*, *maximum*, and *minimum* of all the elements in a single array. The *dot product* produces a scalar  $S = \sum_{i=1}^n A_i \times B_i$  from two arrays A(1:n) and B(1:n). The loop

```
Do 40 I = 1, N
S1:   A(I) = B(I) + C(I)
S2:   S = S + A(I)
S3:   AMAX = MAX(AMAX, A(I))
40 Continue
```

has the following dependence relations:  $S_1(=)S_2$ ,  $S_1(=)S_3$ ,  $S_2(<)S_2$ ,  $S_3 < S_3$ . Although statements  $S_2$  and  $S_3$  each form a dependence cycle, each statement is recognized as a reduction operation and can be vectorized as follows:

```
S1:  A(1:N) = B(1:N) + C(1:N)
S2:  S = SUM(A(1:N))
S3:  AMAX = MAX(AMAX, MAXVAL(A(1:N)))
```

where SUM, MAX, and MAXVAL are all vector operations.

(5) *Node Splitting* The data dependence cycle can sometimes be broken by node splitting. Consider the following loop:

```
Do 50 I = 2, N
S1:   T(I) = A(I - 1) + A(I + 1)
S2:   A(I) = B(I) + C(I)
50 Continue
```

Now we have the dependence cycle  $S_1(<)S_2$  and  $S_1(>)S_2$ , which seems to prevent vectorization. However, we can split statement  $S_1$  into two parts and apply statement reordering:

```
Do 50 I=2, N
S1a:   X(I) = A(I + 1)
S2:   A(I) = B(I) + C(I)
S1b:   T(I) = A(I - 1) + X(I)
50 Continue
```

The new loop structure has no dependence cycle and thus can be vectorized:

$$\begin{aligned}S_{1a}: \quad & X(2:N) = A(3:N + 1) \\S_2: \quad & A(2:N) = B(2:N) + C(2:N) \\S_{1b}: \quad & T(2:N) = A(1:N - 1) + X(2:N)\end{aligned}$$

It should be noted that node splitting cannot resolve all dependence cycles.

(6) *Other Vector Optimizations* There are many other methods for vectorization, and we do not intend to discuss them all. For example, *scalar variables* in a loop can sometimes be expanded into dimensional arrays to enable vectorization. *Subexpressions* in a complex expression can be vectorized separately. Loops can be *peeled*, *unrolled*, *rerolled*, or *tiled* (blocking) for vectorization.

Some machine-dependent optimizations can also be performed, such as *strip mining* (loop sectioning) and *pipeline chaining*, introduced in Chapter 8. Sometimes a vector register can be used as an accumulator, making it possible for the compiler to move loads and stores of the register outside the vector loop. The movement of an operation out of a loop to a basic block preceding the loop is called *hoisting*, and the inverse is called *sinking*. Vector loads and stores can be hoisted or sunk only when the array reference and assignment have the same subscripts and all the subscripts are the induction variable of a vectorized loop or loop constants.

**Vectorization Inhibitors** Listed below are some conditions inhibiting or preventing vectorization:

- (1) Computed conditional statements such as IF statements which depend on runtime conditions.
- (2) Multiple loop entries or exits (not basic blocks).
- (3) Function or subroutine calls.
- (4) Input/output statements.
- (5) Recurrences and their variations.

A *recurrence* exists when a value calculated in one iteration of a loop might be referenced in another iteration. This occurs when dependence cycles exist between loop iterations. In other words, there must be at least one *loop-carried dependence* for a recurrence to exist. Any number of *loop-independent dependences* can occur in a loop, but a recurrence does not exist unless that loop contains at least one loop-carried dependence.

**Code Parallelization** Parallel code optimization spreads a single program into many threads for parallel execution by multiple processors. The purpose is to reduce the total execution time. Each *thread* is a sequence of instructions that must execute on a single processor. The most often parallelized code structure is performed over the outermost loop if dependence can be properly controlled and synchronized.

Consider the two-deep loop nest in Eq. 10.6. Because all the dependence relations have a “=” direction in the *I*-loop, this outer loop can be parallelized with no need for synchronization between the loop iterations. The parallelized code is as follows:

```
Doall I = 2, N
  Do J = 2, N
    S1:      A(I, J) = (A(I, J - 1) + A(I, J + 1)) / 2
    Enddo
  Endall
```

Each of the  $N-1$  iterations in the outer loop can be scheduled for a single processor to execute. Each newly created thread consists of one entire  $J$ -loop with a constant index value for  $I$ . If dependence does exist between the iterations, the Doacross construct can be used with proper synchronization among the iterations. The following example shows five execution modes of a serial loop execution to various combinations of parallelization and vectorization of the same program.



### Example 10.8 Five execution modes of a FX/Fortran loop on the Alliant FX/80 multiprocessor (Alliant Computer Systems Corporation, 1989)

FX/Fortran generates code to execute a simple Do loop in *scalar*, *vector*, *scalar-concurrent*, *vector-concurrent*, and *concurrent outer/vector inner* (COVI) modes. The computations involved are performed either over a one-dimensional data array  $A(1:2048)$  or over a two-dimensional data array  $B(1:256, 1:8)$ , where  $A(K)=B(I, J)$  for  $K=8(I-1)+J$ .

By using array  $A$ , the computations involved are expressed by a pure scalar loop:

```
Do K = 1, 2048
    A(K) = A(K) + S
Enddo
```

where  $S$  is a scalar constant. Figure 10.8a shows the scalar (serial) execution on a single processor in 30,616 clock cycles.

The same code can be vectorized into eight vector instructions and executed serially on a single processor equipped with vector hardware. Each vector instruction works on 256 iterations of the following loop:

$$A(1:2048:256) = A(1:2048:256) + S$$

The total execution is reduced to 6048 clock cycles as shown in Fig. 10.8b.

The scalar-concurrent mode is shown in Fig. 10.8c. Eight processors are used in parallel, performing the following scalar computations:

```
Doall J = 1, 8
    Do I = 1, 256
        B(I, J) = B(I, J) + S
    Enddo
Endall
```

Now, the total execution time is further reduced to 3992 clock cycles.

Figure 10.8d shows the vector-concurrent mode on eight processors, all equipped with vector hardware. The following vector codes are executed in parallel:

```
Doall J = 1, 8
    A(K:2040+K:8) = A(K:2040+K:8) + S
Endall
```

This vectorized execution by eight processors results in a total time of 960 clock cycles.

Finally, the same program can be executed in COVI mode. The inner loop executes in vector mode, and the outer loop is executed in parallel mode. In Fortran 90 notation, we have:

$$B(1:8, 1:256) = B(1:8, 1:256) + S$$

The total execution time is now reduced to 756 clock cycles, the shortest among the five execution modes.

$$A(1) = A(1) + S, A(2) = A(2) + S, \dots, A(2048) = A(2048) + S$$

(a) Scalar execution on one processor in 30,616 cycles

$$A(1: 256) = A(1: 256) + S, A(257: 512) = A(257 : 512) + S, \dots$$

$$A(1793 : 2048) = A(1793 : 2048) + S$$

(b) Vector execution on one processor sequentially in 6048 cycles

$$P_1: B(1, 1) = B(1, 1) + S, B(1, 2) = B(1, 2) + S, \dots, B(1, 256) = B(1, 256) + S$$

$$P_2: B(2, 1) = B(2, 1) + S, B(2, 2) = B(2, 2) + S, \dots, B(2, 256) = B(2, 256) + S$$

⋮

$$P_8: B(8, 1) = B(8, 1) + S, B(8, 2) = B(8, 2) + S, \dots, B(8, 256) = B(8, 256) + S$$

(c) Scalar-concurrent execution on eight processors in 3992 cycles

$$P_1: A(1: 2041 : 8) = A(1 : 2041 : 8) + S$$

$$P_2: A(2: 2042 : 8) = A(2 : 2042 : 8) + S$$

⋮

$$P_8: A(8 : 2048 : 8) = A(8 : 2048 : 8) + S$$

(d) Vector-concurrent execution on eight processors in 960 cycles

$$P_1: B(1, 1 : 256) = B(1, 1 : 256) + S$$

$$P_2: B(2, 1 : 256) = B(2, 1 : 256) + S$$

⋮

$$P_8: B(8, 1 : 256) = B(8, 1 : 256) + S$$

(e) COVI execution on eight processors in 756 cycles

**Fig. 10.8** Five execution modes of a FX/Fortran loop on the Alliant Multiprocessor (Courtesy of Alliant Computer Systems Corporation, 1989)

**Inhibitors of Parallelization** Most inhibitors of vectorization also prevent parallelization. Listed below are some inhibitors of parallelization:

- (1) Multiple entries or exits.
- (2) Function or subroutine calls.

- (3) Input/output statements.
- (4) Nondeterminism of parallel execution.
- (5) Loop-carried dependences.

While only backward dependences interfere with vectorization, forward and backward dependences both affect parallelization. The overhead of synchronization code can outweigh performance gains from parallelization. We will illustrate this tradeoff analysis for multitasking on the Cray X-MP in Chapter 11. Most code parallelization is conducted at the loop level. To reduce or increase grain size, one must consider the tradeoffs between computations and communication. This is a difficult problem, and none of the existing compilers for parallelism has this capability. In most cases, the tradeoff studies are done by programmers. However, compiler directives can be used to guide the code optimization process.

#### 10.4.4 Code Generation and Scheduling

Issues involved in code generation include order of execution, instruction selection, register allocation, branch handling, post-optimizations, etc. We describe the concepts of basic blocks and instruction scheduling schemes for basic blocks. Then we consider register allocation, pattern matching, and other table-driven methods for advanced code generation. How to expand code generation methods for multiple processors systematically is still a wide-open research area.

**Directed Acyclic Graphs** Because instructions within each basic block are sequenced without any backtracks, computations performed can thus be represented by a *directed acyclic graph* (DAG). A DAG can be built in one pass through a basic block. The nodes in a DAG represent *values*. Each interior node is labeled by the operator that produces its value. Edges on the DAG show the data dependence constraints. The children of a node are the nodes producing the operand values. The leaf nodes carry the initial values or constants existing on entry to a basic block.

DAG construction repeats the following steps from node to node. Consider the statement  $A := B + C$  in a basic block. We first find nodes representing the values of  $B$  and  $C$ . If  $B$  and  $C$  are not computed in the block, they must be retrieved from leaf nodes. Otherwise,  $B$  and  $C$  should come from interior nodes of the DAG. Then we create a node labeled “+”. Children of this node are the nodes for values of  $B$  and  $C$ . If there is already an identical node (same label and same child nodes), node creation can be skipped. The node for “+” becomes the current node for  $A$ . In the case of a data transfer operation  $A := B$ , find the node representing the value of  $B$ . Then the node representing  $B$  becomes the current node for  $A$ . Exceptions do exist. A procedure call must assume all variable values have changed. If a variable could possibly point to another variable, then that variable could now have a new value. Assignment to elements of an array must be assumed to alter the entire array.



#### Example 10.9 Construction of a DAG for the inner loop kernel of the bubble sort program (S. Graham, J. L. Hennessy, and J. D. Ullman, 1992)

Listed below are the statements contained in the basic block B7 of the bubble sort program in Fig. 10.7.

```

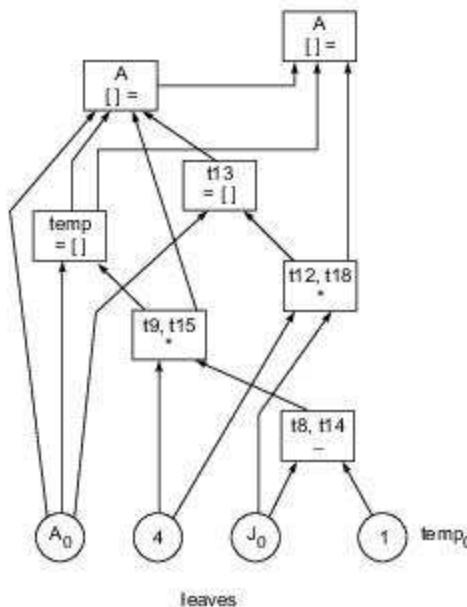
t8      :=  j - 1
t9      :=  4 * t8 } temp := A[j]
temp   :=  A[t9]

t10     :=  j + 1
t11     :=  t10 - 1 } A[j + 1]
t12     :=  4 * t11
t13     :=  A[t12]

t14     :=  j - 1
t15     :=  4 * t14 } A[j] := A[j + 1]
A[t15]  :=  t13

t16     :=  j + 1
t17     :=  t16 - 1 } A[j + 1] := temp
t18     :=  4 * t17
A[t18]  :=  temp
  
```

The corresponding DAG representation of block B7 is shown in Fig. 10.9. For nodes with the same operator, one or more names are labeled provided they consume the same operands (although they may use different values at different times). The initial value of any variable  $x$  is denoted by  $x_0$ , such as the  $A_0, j_0$ , and  $temp_0$  at the leaf nodes.



**Fig. 10.9** Directed acyclic graph representation of the basic block B7, the inner loop of the bubble sort program in Examples 10.6 and 10.7 (Courtesy of S. Graham, J. L. Hennessy, and J. D. Ullman, *Course on Code Optimization and Code Generation*, Western Institute of Computer Science, Stanford University, 1992)

In order to construct a DAG systematically, an auxiliary table can be used to keep track of variables and temporaries. The DAG construction process automatically detects common subexpressions and eliminates them accordingly. *Copy propagation* can be used to compute only one of the variables in each class. The construction process can easily discover the variables used or assigned and the nodes whose values can be computed at compile time. Any node whose children are constants is itself a constant. One can also label the edges in a DAG with the delays.

**List Scheduling** A DAG represents the flow of instructions in a basic block. A *topological sort* can be used to schedule the operations. Let READY be a buffer holding all nodes which are ready to execute. Initially, the READY buffer holds all leaf nodes with zero predecessors. Schedule each node in READY as early as possible, until it becomes empty. After all the predecessor (children) nodes are scheduled, the successor (parent) node should be immediately inserted into the READY buffer.

With list scheduling, each interior node is scheduled after its children. Additional ordering constraints are needed for a procedure call or assignment through a pointer. When the root nodes are reached, the schedule is produced. The length of the schedule equals the critical path on the DAG. To determine the critical path, both edge delays and nodal delays must be counted.

Some priority scheme can be used in selecting instructions from the READY buffer for scheduling. For example, the seven interior nodes of the DAG in Fig. 10.9 can be scheduled as follows, based on the topological order. In the case of two temporaries using the same node, we select the lower-numbered one. The following sequential code results:

```
t12 := 4 * j  
t8 := j - 1  
t13 := A[t12]  
t9 := 4 * t8  
temp := A[t9]  
A[t9] := t13  
A[t12] := temp
```

List scheduling schedules operations in topological order. There are no backtracks in the schedule. It is considered the best among critical-path, branch-and-bound for microinstruction scheduling (Joseph Fisher, 1979). Variations of topological list scheduling do exist such as introducing a *priority junction* for ready nodes, using *top-down* versus *bottom-up* direction, and using cycle scheduling as explained below. Whenever possible, parallel scheduling of nodes should be exploited, of course, subject to data, control, and resource dependence constraints.

**Cycle Scheduling** List scheduling is operation-based, which has the advantage that the highest-priority operation is scheduled first. Another scheduling method for instructions in basic blocks is based on a *cycle scheduling* concept in which “cycles” rather “operations” are scheduled in order. Let READY be a buffer holding nodes with zero unscheduled predecessors ready to execute in a current cycle. Let LEADER be a buffer holding nodes with zero unscheduled predecessors but not ready in a current cycle (e.g. due to some latency unfulfilled). The following cycle scheduling algorithm is modified from the list scheduling algorithm:

```
Current-cycle = 0
```

```
Loop until READY and LEADER are empty
  For each node n in READY (in decreasing priority order)
    Try to schedule n in current cycle
    If successful, update READY and LEADER
    Increment Current-cycle by 1
  end of loop
```

The advantages of cycle scheduling include simplicity in implementation for single-cycle resources, such as in a superscalar processor. There is no need to keep records of source usage and it is also easier to keep track of register lifetimes. It can be considered an improvement over the list scheduling scheme, which may result in more idle cycles. LEADER provides another level of buffering. Nodes in LEADER that have become ready should be immediately loaded into the READY queue.

**Register Allocation** Traditional instruction scheduling methods minimize the number of registers used, which also reduces the degree of parallelism exploited. To optimize the code generated from a DAG, one can convert it to a sequence of *expression trees* and then study optimization for the trees. The registers can be allocated with instructions in the scheduling scheme.

In general, more registers would allow more parallelism. The above bottom-up scheduling methods shorten register lifetimes for expression trees. A round-robin scheme can be used to allocate registers while the schedule is being generated. Or one can assume an infinite number of registers to produce a schedule first and then allocate registers and add spill code later. Another approach is to integrate register allocation with scheduling by keeping track of the liveness of registers. When the remaining registers are greater than a given threshold, one should maximize parallelism. Otherwise, one should reduce the number of registers allocated.

Register allocation can be optimized by register descriptors (or tags) to distinguish among constant, variable, indexed variable, frame pointer, etc. This tagged register may enable some additional local or global code optimizations. Another advanced feature is special branch handling, such as delayed branches or using shorter delay slots if possible.

Code generation can be improved with a better instruction selection scheme. We can first generate code for expression trees needing no register spills. One can also select instructions by recursively matching templates to parts of expression trees. A match causes code to be generated and the subtree to be rewritten with a subtree for the result. The process ends when the subtree is reduced to a single node. When template matching fails, heuristics can be used to generate subgoals for another matching. The key ideas of instruction selection by pattern matching include:

- (1) Convert code generation to primarily a systematic process.
- (2) Use tree-structured patterns describing instructions and use a tree-structured intermediate form.
- (3) Select instructions by covering input to instruction patterns.

Major issues in pattern-based instruction selection include development of pattern matching algorithms, design of intermediate form and target machine descriptions, and interaction with low-level optimization. Extensive table descriptions are needed. Therefore table compression techniques are needed to handle large numbers of patterns to be matched.

Advanced code generation needs to be directed toward exploitation of parallelism. Therefore special compilation support is needed for superscalar and multithreaded processors. These are still open research

problems. Partial solutions to these problems can be found in subsequent sections. There is still a long way to go in developing really “intelligent” compilers for parallel computers.

#### 10.4.5 Trace Scheduling Compilation

Branch prediction has been used in a software scheduling technique called *trace scheduling*. The idea was originally developed for scheduling and packing operations into *horizontal microinstructions*. Trace scheduling was proposed for use in VLIW architecture designed for scientific computation without vectorization.

The concept of trace scheduling is illustrated in Fig. 10.10. A *trace* is formed by a sequence of basic blocks, separated by assuming a particular outcome for every branch encountered in the sequence. The code example shows the first trace involving three basic blocks (A, B, and C). There are many traces for different combinations of branch outcomes. The second trace corresponds to another branch combination. Each trace is scheduled for parallel execution by a VLIW processor.

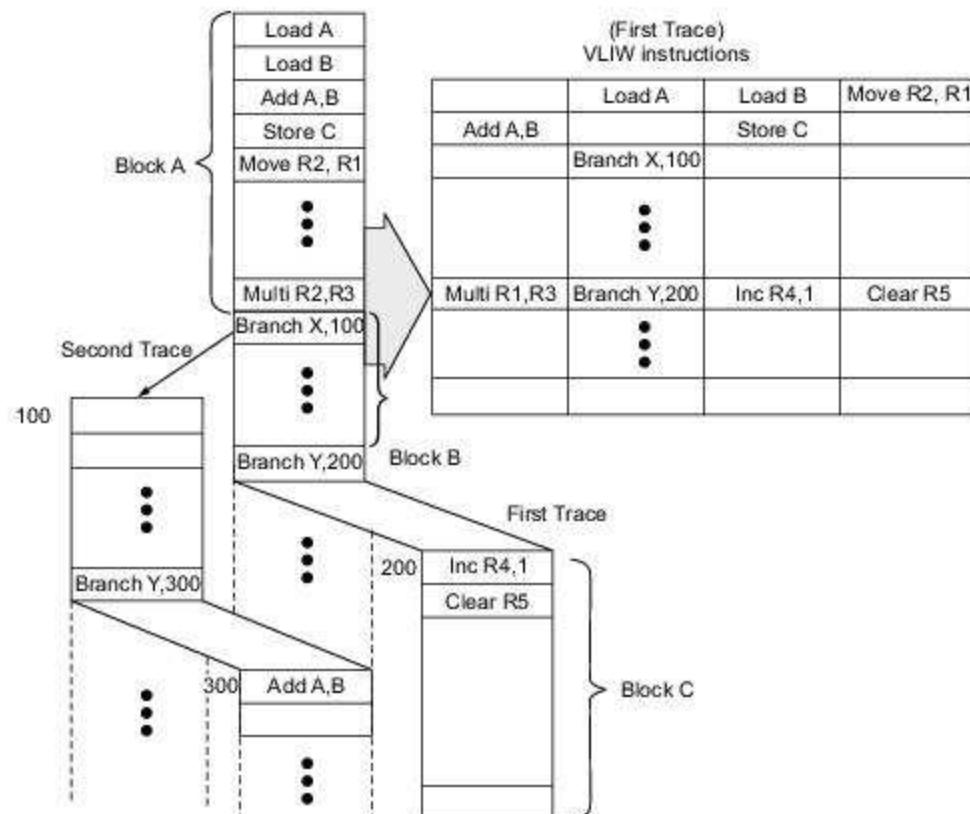


Fig. 10.10 Code compaction for VLIW processor based on trace scheduling developed by Joshep Fisher (1981)

**Code Compaction** Independent instructions in the trace are compacted into VLIW instructions. Each VLIW word can be packed with multiple short instructions which can be independently executed in parallel.

The decoding of these independent instructions is carried out simultaneously. Multiple function units (such as the memory-access unit, arithmetic unit, branch unit, etc.) are employed to carry out the parallel execution. Only independent operations are packed into a VLIW instruction.

Branch prediction is based on software heuristics or on using profiles of previous program executions. Each trace should correspond to the most likely execution path. The first trace should be the most likely one, the second trace should be the second most likely one, and so on. In fact, reduction in the execution time of an earlier trace is obtained at the expense of that of later traces. In other words, the execution time of likely traces is reduced at the expense of that of unlikely traces.

**Compensation Code** The effectiveness of trace scheduling depends on correct predictions at successive branches in a program. To cope with the problem of code movement followed by incorrect prediction, compensation codes are added to off-trace paths to provide correct linkage with the rest of program. Because code compaction may move short instructions up or down in the program, different compensation codes must be inserted to restore the original code distribution in the code blocks involved.



### Example 10.10 Trace scheduling with code compaction and compensation

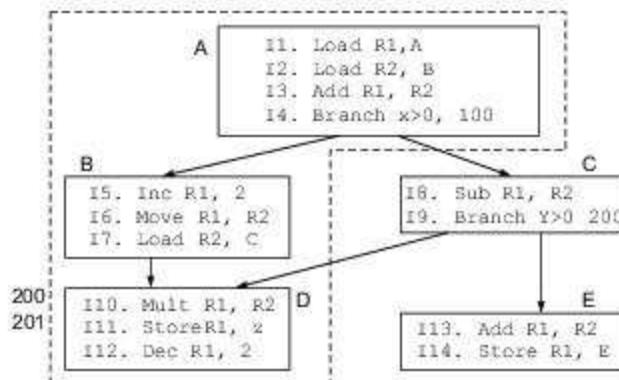
Consider an example program consisting of five basic blocks in Fig. 10.11a. The initial trace contains blocks A, B, and D, after it is predicted that execution of I4 and I9 will lead to the left path. In Fig. 10.11b, instruction I3 has been moved from block A to block B, and I7 moved to block D, to form the new blocks A', B' and D'.

Therefore, we need to insert instruction I3 in block C' also and modify the target address to 201 in branch instruction I9. Similarly, some instructions have been moved up to preceding blocks (Fig. 10.11c). Compensation codes, Undo I5 and I10, must be inserted in block C' to restore the original program semantics.

Compensation codes (in shaded boxes in Fig. 10.11) are needed on off-trace paths. This will make the second trace correctly executed, without being affected by the first trace due to code movement. The compensation code added should be a small portion of the code blocks. Sometimes the Undo operation cannot be used due to the lack of an inverse operation in the instruction set. By adding compensation code, software is performing the function of the branch history buffer described in Chapter 6.

The efficiency of trace scheduling depends on the degree of correct prediction of branches. With accurate branch predictions, the compensation code added may not be executed at all. The fewer the number of most likely traces to be executed, the better the performance will be.

Trace scheduling was mainly designed for VLIW processors. For superscalar processors, similar techniques can exploit parallelism in a program whose branch behavior is relatively easier to predict, such as in some scientific applications.



(a) The first trace on the flow graph.

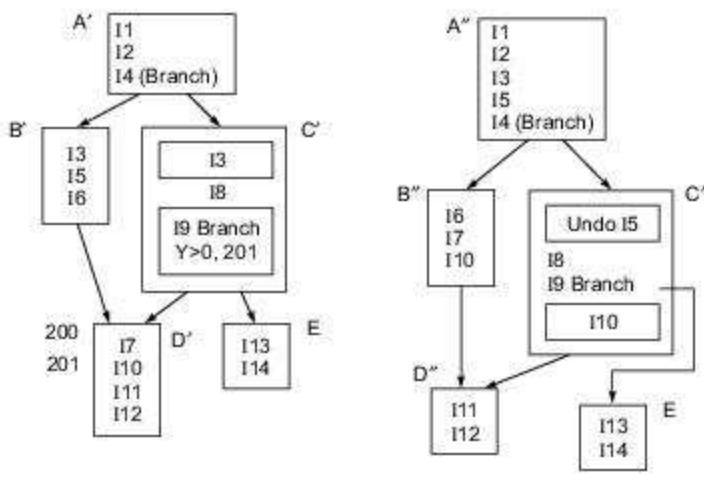


Fig. 10.11 Code motions for trace scheduling compacting in Example 10.10

**10.5****LOOP PARALLELIZATION AND PIPELINING**

This section describes the theory and application of loop transformations for vectorization or parallelization purposes. At the end, we address software pipelining techniques.

**10.5.1 Loop Transformation Theory**

Parallelizing loop nests is one of the most fundamental program optimization techniques demanded in a vectorizing and parallelizing compiler. In this section, we study a loop transformation theory and loop transformation algorithms derived from this theory. The bulk of the material is based on the work by Wolf and Lam (1991).

The theory unifies all combinations of loop interchange, skewing, reversal, and tilting as *unimodular transformations*. The goal is to maximize the degree of parallelism or data locality in a loop nest. These transformations also support efficient use of the memory hierarchy on a parallel machine.

**Elementary Transformations** A loop transformation rearranges the execution order of the iterations in a loop nest. Three elementary loop transformations are introduced below.

- (1) **Permutation**—A permutation  $\delta$  on a loop nest transforms iteration  $(p_1, \dots, p_n)$  to  $(p_{\delta_1}, \dots, p_{\delta_n})$ . This transformation can be expressed in matrix form as  $I_\delta$ , the  $n \times n$  identity matrix with rows permuted by  $\delta$ . For  $n = 2$ , a loop interchange transformation maps iteration  $(i, j)$  to iteration  $(j, i)$ . In matrix notation, we can write this as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i \\ j \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} j \\ i \end{bmatrix}$$

The following two-deep loop nest is being transformed using the permutation matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$  as depicted in Fig. 10.12a.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Do</b> $i = 1, N$<br><b>Do</b> $j = 1, N$<br>$A(j) = A(j) + C(i, j) \Rightarrow$<br><b>Enddo</b><br><b>Enddo</b> | <b>Do</b> $j = 1, N$<br><b>Do</b> $i = 1, N$<br>$A(j) = A(j) + C(i, j)$<br><b>Enddo</b><br><b>Enddo</b> |
|---|---|

- (2) **Reversal**—Reversal of the  $i$ th loop is represented by the identity matrix with the  $i$ th element on the diagonal equal to  $-1$ .

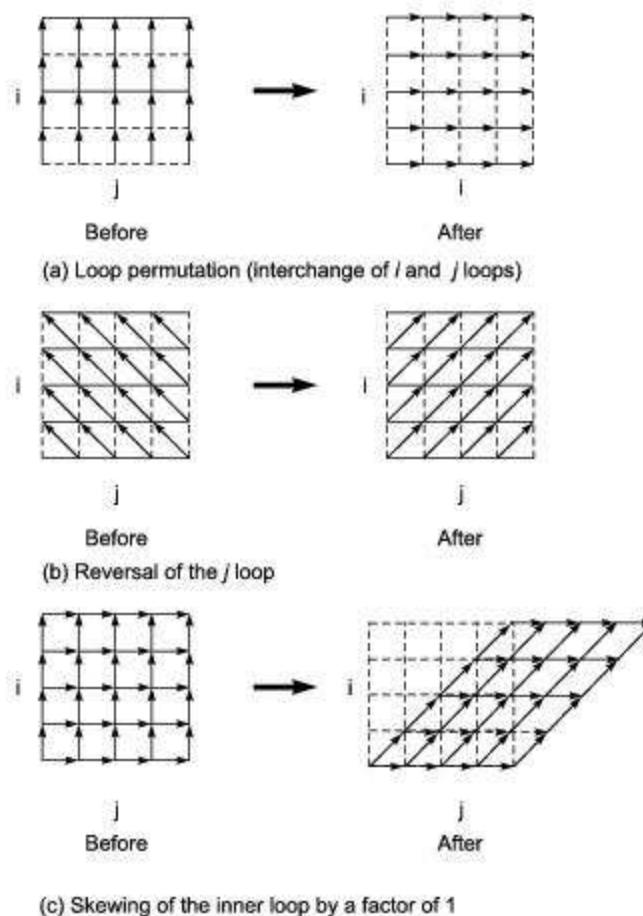
The following loop nest is being reversed using the transformation matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$  as depicted in Fig. 10.12b.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Do</b> $i = 1, N$<br><b>Do</b> $j = 1, N$<br>$A(i, j) = A(i-1, j+1) \Rightarrow$<br><b>Enddo</b><br><b>Enddo</b> | <b>Do</b> $i = 1, N$<br><b>Do</b> $j = -N, -1$<br>$A(i, -j) = A(i-1, -j+1)$<br><b>Enddo</b><br><b>Enddo</b> |
|---|---|

- (3) **Skewing**—Skewing loop  $I_j$  by an integer factor  $f$  with respect to loop  $I_i$  maps iteration  $(p_1, \dots, p_{i-1}, p_i, p_{i+1}, \dots, p_{j-1}, p_j, p_{j+1}, \dots, p_n)$  to  $(p_1, \dots, p_{i-1}, p_i, p_{i+1}, \dots, p_{j-1}, p_j + fp_i, p_{j+1}, \dots, p_n)$ .

In the following loop nest, the transformation performed is a skew of the inner loop with respect to the outer loop by a factor of 1, represented by the transformation matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$  as depicted in Figure 10.12c.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Do</b> $i = 1, N$<br><b>Do</b> $j = 1, N$<br>$A(i, j) = A(i, j-1) +$<br>$A(i-1, j)$<br><b>Enddo</b><br><b>Enddo</b> | <b>Do</b> $j = 1, N$<br><b>Do</b> $j = 1, N$<br>$A(i, j-i) = A(i, j-i-1) +$<br>$A(i-1, j-i)$<br><b>Enddo</b><br><b>Enddo</b> |
|--|--|



**Fig. 10.12** Loop transformations performed in Example 10.9 (Courtesy of Monica Lam, WISC Tutorial Notes, Stanford University, 1992)

Various combinations of the above elementary loop transformations can be defined. Wolf and Lam have called these *unimodular transformations*. The optimization problem is thus to find the unimodular transformation that maximizes an objective function given a set of schedule constraints.

**Transformation Matrices** Unimodular transformations are defined by *unimodular matrices*. A unimodular matrix has three important properties. First, it is square, meaning that it maps an  $n$ -dimensional iteration space into an  $n$ -dimensional iteration space. Second, it has all integer components, so it maps integer vectors to integer vectors. Third, the absolute value of its determinant is 1.

Because of these properties, the product of two unimodular matrices is unimodular, and the inverse of a unimodular matrix is unimodular, so that combinations of unimodular loop transformations and the inverse of unimodular loop transformations are also unimodular loop transformations. A loop transformation is said to be *legal* if the transformed dependence vectors are all lexicographically positive.

A compound loop transformation can be synthesized from a sequence of primitive transformations, and the effect of the loop transformation is represented by the products of the various transformation matrices for each primitive transformation. The major issues for loop transformation include how to apply a transform, correctness or locality, and desirability or advantages of applying a transform. Wolf and Lam (1991) have stated the following conditions for unimodular transformations:

- (1) Let  $D$  be the set of distance vectors of a loop nest. A unimodular transformation (matrix)  $T$  is *legal*, if and only if  $\forall d \in D$ ,

$$T \cdot d \geq 0 \quad (10.7)$$

- (2) Loops  $i$  through  $j$  of a nested computation with dependence vectors  $D$  are *fully permutable*, if  $\forall d \in D$ ,

$$((d_1, d_2, \dots, d_{i-1}) > 0 \text{ or } (\forall i \leq k \leq j : d_k \geq 0)) \quad (10.8)$$

Proofs of these two conditions are left as exercises for the reader. The following example shows how to determine the legality of unimodular transformations.

```

Do i = 1, N
  Do j = 1, N
    A(i, j) = f(A(i, j), A(i + 1, j - 1))
  Enddo
Enddo

```

This code has the dependence vector  $d = (1, -1)$ . The loop interchange transformation is represented by the matrix

$$T = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The transformation is illegal since  $T \cdot d = (-1, 1)$  is lexicographically negative. However, compounding the interchange with a reversal represented by the transformation matrix

$$T' = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

is legal because  $T' \cdot d = (1, 1)$  is lexicographically positive.

### 10.5.2 Parallelization and Wavefronting

The theory of loop transformation can be applied to execute loop iterations in parallel. In this section, we describe loop parallelization procedures. A wavefronting approach is presented for fine-grain parallelization. Tiling is applied to reduce synchronization costs in coarse-grain computations.

**Parallelization Conditions** The purpose of loop parallelization is to maximize the number of parallelizable loops. For  $n$ -deep loops whose dependences can be represented with distance vectors, at least  $(n - 1)$  degrees of parallelism can be exploited in both fine-grain and coarse-grain computations.

The algorithm for loop parallelization consists of two steps: It first transforms the original loop nest into a canonical form, namely, a *fully permutable* loop nest. It then transforms the fully permutable loop nest to exploit coarse- and/or fine-grain parallelism according to the target architecture.

- (1) *Canonical form.* Loops with distance vectors have the special property that they can always be transformed into a fully permutable nest via skewing. It is easy to determine how much to skew an inner loop with respect to an outer one to make these loops fully permutable. For example, if a doubly nested loop has dependences  $\{(0, 1), (1, -2), (1, -1)\}$ , then skewing the inner loop by a factor of 2 with respect to the outer loop produces  $\{(0, 1), (1, 0), (1, 1)\}$ .
- (2) *Parallelization process.* Iterations of a loop can execute in parallel if and only if no dependences are carried by that loop. Such a loop is called a Doall loop. To maximize the degree of parallelism is to transform the loop nest to maximize the number of Doall loops.

Let  $(I_1, \dots, I_n)$  be a loop nest with lexicographically positive dependences  $d \in D$ .  $I_i$  is parallelizable if and only if  $\forall d \in D, (d_1, \dots, d_{i-1}) > (0, \dots, 0)$ , the zero vector, or  $d_i = 0$ . Once the loops are made fully permutable, the steps to generate Doall parallelism are simple. In the following discussion, we show that the loops in canonical form can be trivially transformed to produce both fine- and coarse-grain parallelism.

**Fine-Grain Wavefronting** A nest of  $n$  fully permutable loops can be transformed into code containing at least  $(n - 1)$  degrees of parallelism. In the degenerate case where no dependences are carried by these  $n$  loops, the degree of parallelism is  $n$ . Otherwise,  $(n - 1)$  parallel loops can be obtained by skewing the innermost loop in the fully permutable nest by each of the other loops and moving the innermost loop to the outermost position.

This transformation, called *wavefront transformation*, is represented by the following matrix:

$$T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (10.9)$$

Fine-grain parallelism is exploited on vector machines, superscalar processors, and systolic arrays. The following example shows the entire process of loop parallelization exploiting fine-grain parallelism. The process includes skewing and wavefront transformation.



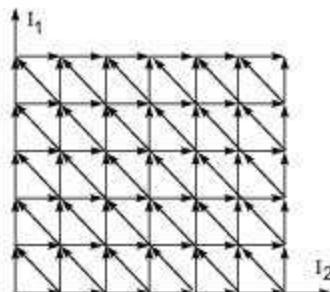
### Example 10.11 Loop skewing and wavefront transformation (Michael Wolf and Monica Lam, 1991)

Figure 10.13a shows the iteration space and dependence of a source loop nest. The skewed loop nest is shown in Fig. 10.13b after applying the matrix  $T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ . Figure 10.13c shows the result of applying wavefront transformation to the skewed loop code, which is a result of first skewing the innermost loop to make the two-dimensional loop nest fully permutable and then applying the wavefront transformation to create one degree of parallelism.

```

For I1 := 0 to 5 do
  For I2 := 0 to 6 do
    A[I2 + 1] := 1/3 * (A[I2] + A[I2 + 1] + A[I2 + 2])
D = {(0,1), (1,0), (1,-1)}

```



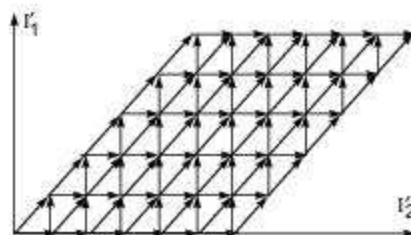
(a) Extract dependence information from source loop nest

```

For I'_1 := 0 to 5 do
  For I'_2 : I'_1 to 6 + I'_1 do
    A[I'_2 - I'_1 + 1] := 1/3 * (A[I'_2 - I'_1]
      + A[I'_2 - I'_1 + 1] + A[I'_2 - I'_1 + 2])
    T =
    
$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

D' = TD = {(0,1), (1,1), (1,0)}

```



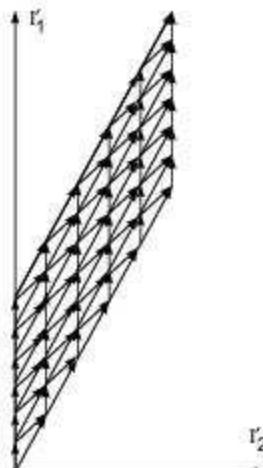
(b) Skew to make inner loop nest fully permutable

```

For I'_1 := 0 to 16 do
  Doall I'_2 := max (0, ⌈(I'_1 - 6)/2⌉) to min (5, ⌊I'_1/2⌋) do
    A[I'_1 - 2I'_2 + 1] := 1/3 * A[I'_1 - 2I'_2] + A[I'_1 - 2I'_2 + 1]
      + A[I'_1 - 2I'_2 + 2]
    T =
    
$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

D' = TD = {(1,0), (2,1), (1,1)}

```



(c) Wavefront transformation on the skewed loop nest

**Fig. 10.13** Fine-grain parallelization by loop skewing and wavefront transformation in Example 10.11  
(Courtesy of Wolf and Lam; reprinted from *IEEE Trans. Parallel Distributed Systems*, 1991)

There are no dependences between iterations within the innermost loop nest. The transform is a wavefront transformation because it causes iterations along the diagonal of the original loop nest to execute in parallel.

This wavefront transformation automatically places the maximum Doall loops in the innermost loops, maximizing fine-grain parallelism. This is the appropriate transformation for superscalar or VLIW machines. Although these machines have a low degree of parallelism, finding multiple parallelizable loops is still useful. Coalescing multiple Doall loops prevents the pitfall of parallelizing only a loop with a small iteration count.

**Coarse-Grain Parallelism** For MIMD coarse-grain multiprocessors, having as many outermost Doall statements as possible reduces the synchronization overhead. A wavefront transformation produces the maximum degree of parallelism but makes the outermost loop sequential if any are. For example, consider the following loop nest:

```

Do  $i = 1, N$ 
  Do  $j = 1, N$ 
     $A(i, j) = f(A(i - 1, j - 1))$ 
  Enddo
Enddo

```

This loop nest has the dependence  $(1, 1)$ , and so the outermost loop is sequential and the innermost loop is a Doall. The wavefront transformation  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$  does not change this. In contrast, the unimodular transformation  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$  transforms the dependence to  $(0, 1)$ , making the outer loop a Doall and the inner loop sequential.

In this example, the dimensionality of the iteration space is two, but the dimensionality of the space spanned by the dependence vectors is only one. When the dependence vectors do not span the entire iteration space, it is possible to perform a transformation that makes outermost Doall loops.

A heuristic though nonoptimal approach for making loops Doall is simply to identify loops  $I_i$  such that all  $d_i$  are zero. Those loops can be made outermost Doall. The remaining loops in the tile can be wavefronted to obtain the remaining parallelism.

Loop parallelization can be achieved through unimodular transformations as well as tiling. For loops with distance vectors,  $n$ -deep loops have at least  $(n - 1)$  degrees of parallelism. The loop parallelization algorithm has a common step for fine- and coarse-grain parallelism in creating an  $n$ -deep fully permutable loop nest by skewing. The algorithm can be tailored for different machines based on the following guidelines:

- Move Doall loop innermost (if one exists) for fine-grain machines. Apply a wavefront transformation to create up to  $(n - 1)$  Doall loops.
- Create outermost Doall loops for coarse-grain machines. Apply tiling to a fully permutable loop nest.
- Use tiling to create loops for both fine- and coarse-grain machines.

### 10.5.3 Tiling and Localization

Tiling and locality optimization techniques are studied in this section. The ultimate purpose is to reduce synchronization overhead and to enhance multiprocessor efficiency when loops are distributed for parallel execution.

**Tiling to Reduce Synchronization** It is possible to reduce the synchronization cost and improve the data locality of parallelized loops via an optimization known as *tiling* (Wolfe, 1989). Tiling is not a unimodular

transformation. In general, tiling maps an  $n$ -deep loop nest into a  $2n$ -deep loop nest where the inner  $n$  loops include only a small fixed number of iterations. Figure 10.14a shows the code after tiling the example in Fig. 10.13b using a tile size of  $2 \times 2$ . The two innermost loops execute the iterations within each tile, represented as  $2 \times 2$  squares. The two outer loops, represented by the two axes, execute the  $3 \times 4$  tiles. The outer loops of the tiled code control the execution of the tiles.

The same property that supports parallelization, full permutability, is also the key to tiling; Loops  $I_1$  through  $I_4$  of a legal computation can be tiled if they are fully permutable.

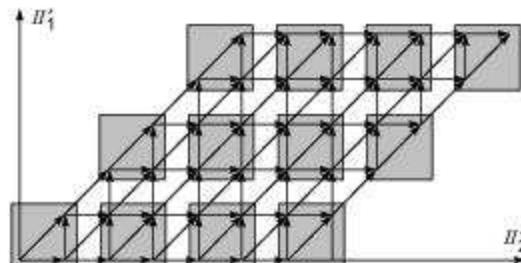
Thus, loops in the canonical form of the parallelization algorithm can also be tiled. Moreover, the characteristics of the controlling loops resemble those of the original set of loops. An abstract view giving the dependences of the tiles is shown in Fig. 10.14b. These controlling loops are themselves permutable and so are easily parallelizable. However, each iteration of the outer  $n$  loops is a tile of iterations instead of an individual iteration. Parallel execution of the tiled loops is shown in Fig. 10.14c.

```

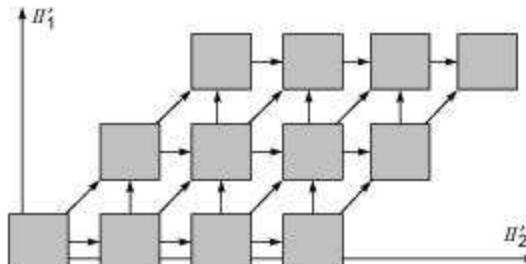
For II1' := 0 to 5 by 2 do
    For II2' := 0 to 11 by 2 do
        For I1' := II1' to min(I1' + 1, 5) do
            For I2' := max(II1', II2') to min(6 + I1', II2' + 1) do
                A[I2'] := 1/3 * (A[I2' - 1] + A[I2'] + A[I2' + 1])

```

(a) Tiled code from the skewed code in Fig. 10.13b



(b) Iteration space and dependences of the tiled code



(c) Parallel execution of the tiled loops.

**Fig. 10.14** Tiling of the skewed loops for parallel execution on a coarse-grain multiprocessor (Courtesy of Wolf and Lam; reprinted from IEEE Trans. Parallel Distributed Systems, 1991)

Tiling can therefore increase the granularity of synchronization and data are often reused within a tile. Without tiling, when a Doall loop is nested within a non-Doall loop, all processors must be synchronized with a barrier at the end of each Doall loop.

Using tiling, we can reduce the synchronization cost in the following two ways. First, instead of applying waveform transformation to the loops in canonical form, we first tile the loops and then apply a waveform transformation to the controlling loops of the tiles. In this way, the synchronization cost is reduced by the size of the tile. Certain loops cannot be represented as distances. Direction vectors can be used to represent these loops. The idea is to represent direction vectors as an infinite set of distance vectors.

*Locality optimization* in user programs is meant to reduce memory-access penalties. Software pipelining can reduce the execution time. Both are desired improvements in the performance of parallel computers. Program locality can be enhanced with loop interchange, reversal, tiling, and prefetching techniques. The effort requires a reuse analysis of a “localized” iteration space. Software pipelining relies heavily on sufficient support from a compiler working effectively with the scheduler.

The fetch of successive elements of a data array is pipelined for an interleaved memory. In order to reduce the access latency, the loop nest can interchange its indices so that a long vector is moved into the innermost loop, which can be more effective with pipelined loads. Loop transformations are performed to reuse the data as soon as possible or to improve the effectiveness of data caches.

Prefetching is often practiced to hide the latency of memory operations. This includes the insertion of special instructions to prefetch data from memory to cache. This will enhance the cache hit ratio and reduce the register occupation rate with a small prefetch overhead. In scientific codes, data prefetching is rather important. Instruction prefetching, as studied in Chapter 6, is often practiced in modern processors using prefetch buffers and an instruction cache. In the following discussion, we concentrate on data prefetching techniques.

**Tiling for Locality** Blocking or tiling is a well-known technique that improves the data locality of numerical algorithms. Tiling can be used for different levels of memory hierarchy such as physical memory, caches, and registers; multilevel tiling can be used to achieve locality at multiple levels of the memory hierarchy simultaneously.

To illustrate the importance of tiling, consider the example of matrix multiplication:

```
Do i = 1, N
  Do j = 1, N
    Do k = 1, N
      C(i, k) = C(i, k) + A(i, j) × B(j, k)
    End do
  End do
End do
```

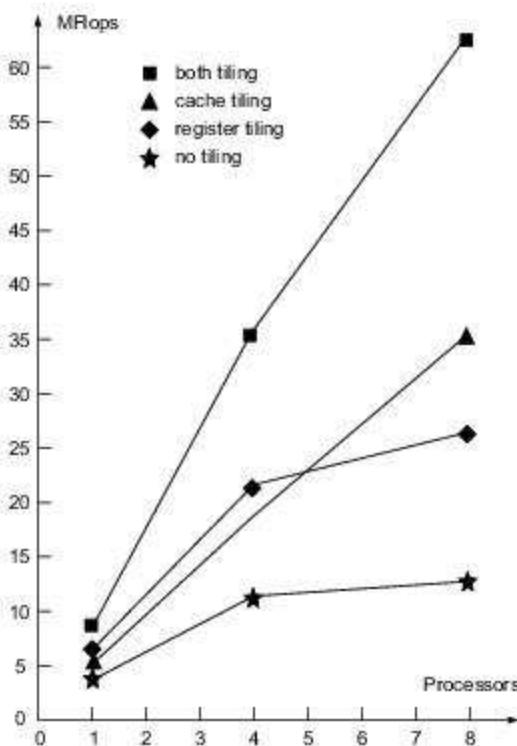
In this code, although the same rows of C and B are reused in the next iteration of the middle and outer loops, respectively, the large volume of data used in the intervening iterations may replace the data from the register file or the cache before they can be reused. Tiling reorders the execution sequence such that iterations from loops of the outer dimensions are executed before all the iterations of the inner loop are completed. The tiled matrix multiplication is:

```

Do  $\ell = 1, N, s$ 
  Do  $m = 1, N, s$ 
    Do  $i = 1, N$ 
      Do  $j = \ell, \min(\ell + s - 1, N)$ 
        Do  $k = m, \min(m + s - 1, N)$ 
           $C(i, k) = C(i, k) + A(i, j) \times B(j, k)$ 
        Enddo
      Enddo
    Enddo
  Enddo

```

Tiling reduces the number of intervening iterations and thus data fetched between data reuses. This allows reused data to still be in the cache or register file and hence reduces memory accesses. The tile size  $s$  can be chosen to allow the maximum reuse for a specific level of memory hierarchy. For example, the tile size is relevant to the cache size used or the register file size used.



**Fig. 10.15** Performance of a  $500 \times 500$  double precision matrix multiplication on the SGI 4D/380. Cache tiles are  $64 \times 64$  iterations and register tiles are  $4 \times 2$  (Courtesy of Wolf and Lam; reprinted from ACM SIGPLAN Conf. Programming Language Design and Implementation, Toronto, Canada, 1991)

The improvement obtained from tiling can be far greater than that obtained from traditional compiler optimizations. Figure 10.15 shows the performance of  $500 \times 500$  matrix multiplication on an SGI 4D/380 machine consisting of eight MIPS R3000 processors running at 33 MHz. Each processor has a 64-Kbyte direct-mapped first-level cache and a 256-Kbyte direct-mapped second-level cache. Results from four different experiments are reported: without tiling, tiling to reuse data in caches, tiling to reuse data in registers, and tiling for both register and caches. For cache tiling, the data are copied into consecutive locations to avoid cache interference.

Tiling improves the performance on a single processor by a factor of 2.75. The effect of tiling on multiple processors is even more significant since it reduces not only the average data-access latency but also the required memory bandwidth. Without cache tiling, contention over the memory bus limits the speedup to about 4.5 times. Cache tiling permits speedups of over 7 for eight processors, achieving an overall speed of 64 Mflops when combined with register tiling.

**Localized Iteration Space** Reusing vector spacing offers opportunities for locality optimization. However, reuse does not imply locality. For example, if reuse does not occur soon enough, it may miss the temporal locality. Therefore, the idea is to make reuse happen soon enough. A *localized iteration space* contains the iterations that can exploit reuse. In fact, tiling increases the number of dimensions in which reuse can be exploited.

Consider the following two-deep nest. Reuse is exploited for loops  $i$  and  $j$  only, which form the localized iteration space:

```
Do i = 1, N
    Do j = 1, N
        B(i, j) = f(A(i), A(j))
    Enddo
Enddo
```

Reference  $A(j)$  touches different data within the inner loop but reuses the same elements across the outer loop. More precisely, the same data  $A(j)$  is used in iterations  $(i, j)$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq N$ . There is reuse, but the reuse is separated by accesses to  $N - 1$  other data. When  $N$  is large, the data is removed from the cache before it can be reused, and there is no locality. Therefore, a reuse does not guarantee locality. The tiled code is shown below:

```
Do ℓ = 1, N, s
    Do i = 1, N
        Do j = ℓ, max(ℓ + s - 1, N)
            B(i, j) = f(A(i), A(j))
        Enddo
    Enddo
Enddo
```

We choose the tile size such that the data used within the tile can be held within the cache. For this example, as long as  $s$  is smaller than the cache size,  $A(j)$  will still be present in the cache when it is reused. Thus, reuse is exploited for loops  $i$  and  $j$  only, and so the localized iteration space includes only these loops.

In general, if  $n$  is the first loop with a large bound, counting from innermost to outermost, then reuse occurring within the inner  $n$  loops can be exploited. Therefore the localized vector space of a tiled loop is simply that of the innermost tile, whether the tile is coalesced or not.

Obviously, memory optimizations are important. Locality can be upheld by intersecting the localized vector space with the reuse vector space. In other words, reuse directs the search for unimodular and tiling transformations. One should use locality information to eliminate unnecessary prefetches.

#### 10.5.4 Software Pipelining

This refers to the pipelining of successive iterations of a loop in the source programs. The advantage of software pipelining is to reduce the execution time with compact object code. The idea was validated by implementation of a compiler for Warp, a systolic array of 10 processors built at CMU (Lam, 1988). Obviously, software pipelining is more effective for deep hardware pipelines. The concept is illustrated with an example taken from Lam's Tutorial Notes on Compilers for Parallel Machines (1992).

**Pipelining of Loop Iterations** Successive iterations of the following loop nest are to be executed on a two-issue processor first without software pipelining and then with pipelining.

```
Do I = 1, N
    A(I) = A(I) × B + C
Enddo
```

This is an example of Doall loops in which all iterations are independent. It is assumed that each memory access (*Read* or *Write*) takes one cycle and each arithmetic operation (*Mul* and *Add*) requires two cycles. Without pipelining, one iteration requires six cycles to execute as listed below:

| Cycle | Instruction | Comment         |
|-------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1     | Read        | /Fetch A[I]/    |
| 2     | Mul         | /Multiply by B/ |
| 3     |             |                 |
| 4     | Add         | /Add to C/      |
| 5     |             |                 |
| 6     | Write       | /Store A[I]/    |

Therefore,  $N$  iterations require  $6N$  cycles to complete, ignoring the loop control overhead. Listed below is the execution of the same code on an 8-deep instruction pipeline:

| Cycle | Iteration |      |      |   |
|-------|-----------|------|------|---|
|       | 1         | 2    | 3    | 4 |
| 1     | Read      |      |      |   |
| 2     | Mul       |      |      |   |
| 3     |           | Read |      |   |
| 4     |           | Mul  |      |   |
| 5     | Add       |      | Read |   |
| 6     |           |      | Mul  |   |

|    |       |     |       |
|----|-------|-----|-------|
| 7  |       | Add | Read  |
| 8  | Write |     | Mul   |
| 9  |       | Add |       |
| 10 | Write |     | Add   |
| 11 |       |     | Write |
| 12 |       |     | Write |
| 13 |       |     |       |
| 14 |       |     | Write |

Four iterations of the software-pipelined code are shown. Although each iteration requires 8 cycles to flow through the pipeline, the four overlapped iterations require only 14 clock cycles to execute. Compared with the nonpipelined execution, a speedup factor of  $24/14 = 1.7$  is achieved with the pipelining of four iterations.

$N$  iterations require  $2N + 6$  cycles to execute with the pipeline. Thus, a speedup factor of  $6N/(2N + 6)$  is achieved. As  $N$  approaches infinity, a speedup factor of 3 is expected. This shows the advantage of software pipelining, if other overhead is ignored.

**Doacross Loops** Unlike unrolling, software pipelining can give optimal results. Locally compacted code may not be globally optimal. The Doall loops can fill arbitrarily long pipelines with infinite iterations. In the following Doacross loop with dependence between iterations, software pipelining can still be done but is harder to implement.

```

Doacross I = 1, N
    A(I) = A(I) × B
    Sum = Sum + A(I);
Enddo

```

The software-pipelined code is shown below:

|   |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|
| 1 | Read  |       |
| 2 | Mul   |       |
| 3 | Add   | Read  |
| 4 | Write | Mul   |
| 5 |       | Add   |
| 6 |       | Write |

It is assumed that one memory access and one arithmetic operation can be concurrently executed on the two-issue superscalar processor in each cycle. Thus recurrences can also be parallelized with software pipelining.

As in the hardware pipeline scheduling in Chapter 6, the objective of software pipelining is to minimize the interval at which iterations are initiated; i.e. the *initiation latency* determines the throughput for the loop. The basic units of scheduling are minimally indivisible sequences of microinstructions. In the above Doall loop example, the initiation latency is two cycles per iteration, and the Doacross loop is also pipelined with an initiation latency of two cycles.

To summarize, software pipelining demands maximizing the throughput by reducing the initiation latency, as well as by producing small, compacted code size. The trick is to find an identical schedule for every iteration with a constant initiation latency. The scheduling problem is tractable, if every operation takes unit execution time and no cyclic dependences exist in the loop.



## Summary

A programming model is a collection of program abstractions which present the programmer with a well-defined view of the software and hardware system. Parallel programming models are defined for the various types of parallel architectures which we have studied in the earlier chapters of the book. We started this chapter with a study of the parallel programming models which have become well-established, namely: shared variable model, message-passing model, data parallel model, object-oriented model and functional and logic models.

For any given model for parallel programming, the user needs to be provided with a parallel programming environment, which consists of parallel languages, compilers, support tools for program development, and runtime support. The programming environment must provide specific features for parallelism aimed at: optimization, availability, synchronization and communication, control of parallelism, data parallelism, and process management. Parallel language constructs are needed in the programming language, of which a few examples have been presented in this chapter. And the compiler must be capable of optimizing the machine code generated for the type of parallelism available in hardware.

Vectorizing or parallelizing compilers can, in theory, detect and exploit the potential parallelism which is present in a sequential program. In this process, dependence analysis of data arrays can reveal the presence or absence of dependences between successive references to array elements in a loop, or in nested loops. In general, two operations can be carried out in parallel only if there is no data or control dependence between them. We reviewed some specific techniques for dependence analysis of data arrays, such as iteration space analysis, subscript separability and partitioning and categorized dependence tests.

Optimization of the machine code generated by the compiler, and cycle-by-cycle scheduling of machine instructions for execution on the processor, are both critical to achieving high performance computing. Local optimization can be carried out within basic blocks, but in general both local and global optimizations are required. We studied several vectorization and parallelization methods, such as the use of temporary storage, loop interchanging, loop distribution, vector reduction, and node splitting.

Code generation and scheduling make use of directed acyclic graphs of operations within basic blocks, and should utilize a register allocation strategy which does not inhibit parallel execution of instructions. Trace-scheduling compilation makes use of program traces obtained from multiple previous executions of the same program.

Loop transformations may in general be required prior to parallelization and/or vectorization of program code. Permutation, reversal, skewing, and transformation matrices are some of the specific techniques which can be applied. Wavefronting can be useful in exploiting fine-grain parallelism, while tiling can help achieve locality and reduce synchronization costs in coarse-grain computations. Software pipelining of loop iterations is another possible technique to parallelize a sequential program.



## Exercises

---

**Problem 10.1** Explain the following terms associated with message-passing programming of multicomputers:

- Synchronous versus asynchronous message-passing schemes.
- Blocking versus nonblocking communications.
- The rendezvous concept introduced in the Ada programming system.
- Name-addressing versus channel-addressing schemes for message passing.
- Uncoupling between sender and receiver using buffers or mailboxes.
- Lost-message handling and interrupt-message handling.

**Problem 10.2** Concurrent object-oriented programming was introduced in Section 10.1.4. Chain multiplication of a list of numbers was illustrated in Example 10.2 based on a divide-and-conquer strategy. A fragment of a Lisp-like code for multiplying the sequence of numbers is given below:

```
(define tree-product
  (lambda [tree]
    (if (number ? tree)
        tree
        (*(tree-product(left-tree) tree))
        (*(tree-product(right-tree) tree)))))
```

In this code, a tree is passed to `tree-product`, which tests to see if the tree is a number (i.e. a singleton at the leaf node). If so, it returns the tree; otherwise it subdivides the problem into two recursive calls. The `left-tree` and `right-tree` are functions which pick off the left and right branches of the tree. Note that the argument to `*` may be evaluated concurrently.

Write a Lisp code to implement this divide-and-conquer algorithm for chain multiplication on a multiprocessor or a multicomputer system. Compare the execution time by running the same

program sequentially on a uniprocessor system. The chain should be sufficiently long to see the difference.

**Problem 10.3** Gaussian elimination with partial pivoting was implemented by [Quinn90] and Hatcher in C\* code on the Connection Machine, as well as in concurrent C code on an nCUBE 3200 multicomputer.

- Discuss the translation/compiler effort from C\* to C on the two machines after a careful reading of the paper by Quinn and Hatcher.
- Comment on SPMD (single program and multiple data streams) programming style as opposed to SIMD programming style, in terms of synchronization implementation and related performance issues.
- Repeat the program conversion experiments for a fast Fourier transform (FFT) algorithm. Perform the program conversion manually at the algorithm level using pseudo-codes with parallel constructs.

**Problem 10.4** Explain the following terms related to shared-variable programming on multiprocessors.

- Multiprogramming.
- Multiprocessing in MIMD mode.
- Multiprocessing in MPMD mode.
- Multitasking.
- Multithreading.
- Program partitioning.

**Problem 10.5** The following arrays are declared in Fortran 90.

```
REAL A(10, 10, 5)
REAL B(9, 9)
REAL C(3, 4, 5)
```

- List array elements specified by the following array expressions: `A(5, 8:*, *)`, `B(3:*, 3, 5:8)`, and `C(*, 3, 4)`.
- Can you make the following array assignments?

$$\begin{aligned} A(3:5, 7, 4:6) &= C(*, 3, 3:5), \\ B(1:2, 7:9) &= B(7:9, 4:6), \\ C(*, 4, 4:5) &= B(7:9, 8:9), \text{ and} \\ A(5, 9:10, 2:4) &= A(7, 3:4, 3:*) + C(2, 4:5, 1:3). \end{aligned}$$

**Problem 10.6** Determine the dependence relations among the three statements in the following loop nest. The direction vector and distance vector should be specified in all dependence relations.

**Do I = 1, N**

**Do J = 2, N**

$$\begin{aligned} S_1: \quad A(I, J) &= A(I, J-1) + B(I, J) \\ S_2: \quad C(I, J) &= A(I, J) + D(I+1, J) \\ S_3: \quad D(I, J) &= 0.1 \end{aligned}$$

**Enddo**

**Enddo**

**Problem 10.7** Consider the following loop nest:

**Do I = 1, N**

$$\begin{aligned} S_1: \quad A(I) &= B(I) \\ S_2: \quad C(I) &= A(I) + B(I) \\ S_3: \quad E(I) &= C(I+1) \end{aligned}$$

**Enddo**

- (a) Determine the dependence relations among the three statements.
- (b) Show how to vectorize the code with Fortran 90 statements.

**Problem 10.8** Consider the following loop nest:

**Do I = 1, N**

**Do J = 2, N**

$$\begin{aligned} S_1: \quad A(I, J) &= B(I, J) + C(I, J) \\ S_2: \quad C(I, J) &= D(I, J)/2 \\ S_3: \quad E(I, J) &= A(I, J-1)^{**2} + E(I, J-1) \end{aligned}$$

**Enddo**

**Enddo**

- (a) Show the data dependences among the statements.
- (b) Show how to parallelize the loop, scheduling the parallelizable iterations to concurrent processors.

**Problem 10.9** Consider the following loop nest:

**Do J = 1, N**

**Do I = 1, N**

$$\begin{aligned} S_1: \quad A(I, J+1) &= B(I, J) + C(I, J) \\ S_2: \quad D(I, J) &= A(I, J)/2 \end{aligned}$$

**Enddo**

**Enddo**

- (a) Show how to compile the code for vectorization in the I-loop, assuming Fortran column-major storage order.
- (b) Show how to compile the code for parallelization in the J-loop using the **Doacross** and **Endacross** commands. You can use a conditional statement or *Signal()* and *Wait(j-1)* for synchronization in the concurrent loop.
- (c) Show how to compile the loop to perform the J-loop in vector mode, while using the **Doall** and **Endall** commands for the outer I-loop.

**Problem 10.10** Explain the following loop transformations and discuss how to apply them for loop vectorization or parallelization:

- (a) Loop permutation.
- (b) Loop reversal.
- (c) Loop skewing.
- (d) Loop tiling.
- (e) Wavefront transformation.
- (f) Locality optimization.
- (g) Software pipelining.

**Problem 10.11** Loop-carried dependence (LCD) exists in the following loops:

- (a) Consider the forward LCD in the following loop:

**Do I = 1, N**

$$A(I) = A(I+1) + 3.14159$$

**Enddo**

Explain why a forward LCD does not prevent vectorization of a loop.

(b) The following loop contains backward LCDs:

**Do** I = 1, N - 1

$$A(I) = B(I) + C(I)$$

$$B(I+1) = D(I) * 3.14159$$

**Enddo**

Show that the loop can be vectorized by statement reordering.

(b)

**Do** I = 1, N

**If** (A (I) .LE. 0.0) **then**

$$S = S + B(I) * C(I)$$

$$X = B(I)$$

**Endif**

**Enddo**

**Problem 10.12** Vectorize or parallelize the following loops if possible. Otherwise, explain why it is not possible.

(a)

**Do** I = 1, N

$$A(I+1) = A(I) + 3.14159$$

**Enddo**

**Problem 10.13** Tanenbaum and associates have suggested a hybrid parallel programming paradigm using shared objects and broadcasting. Study the paper that appeared in *IEEE Computer* (August 1992) and explain how to apply the software paradigm for either multiprocessors or multicamputers.

## 11

# Parallel Program Development and Environments

This chapter describes software environments and program development techniques for parallel computers. We first introduce environments, synchronization, and execution modes. Then we describe methods for shared-variable and message-passing program development. The emphasis is on program modularity, fast communication, load balancing, and performance tuning.

11.1

## PARALLEL PROGRAMMING ENVIRONMENTS

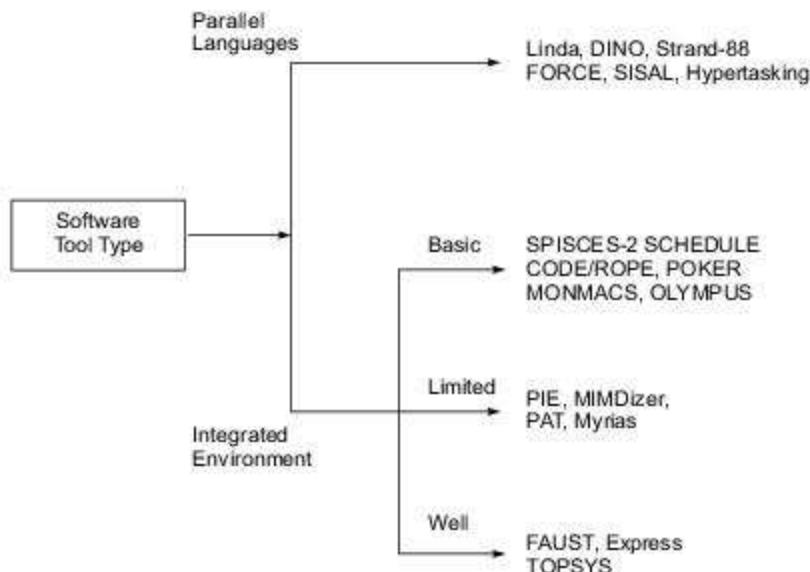
An environment for parallel programming consists of hardware platforms, languages supported, OS and software tools, and application packages. The hardware platforms vary from shared-memory, message-passing, vector processing, and SIMD to dataflow computers. Usually, we directly identify the machine models used, such as Cray Y-MP, BBN Butterfly, iPSC/860, etc.

The last two decades have seen a revolution in massively parallel computer architecture, with system performance reaching hundreds of teraflops and even petaflops. Huge advances in processors, memory, display systems, system interconnects, and networking have contributed to this revolution, while the range of applications of such systems has also grown enormously. Newer applications of such systems include multimedia applications, data mining, and highly sophisticated simulations in science and engineering. As system hardware has developed rapidly, the accompanying parallel programming environments have also evolved and become more powerful; attempts have also been made to develop newer paradigms for parallel programming. While the basic concepts of parallel program development will be studied in this chapter, we shall review some of the more recent advances in Chapter 13.

### 11.1.1 Software Tools and Environments

Parallel programming languages such as Linda and Strand 88 provided the minimal parallel programming environment. Others form an integrated environment consisting of an editor, a debugger, performance monitors, and a program visualizer for improving software productivity and the quality of application programs, such as the packages Express and TOPSYS.

Figure 11.1 shows a classification of environment types on the line between the minimal languages and integrated environments. Integrated environments can be divided into *basic*, *limited*, and *well-developed* classes, depending on the maturity of the tool sets.



**Fig. 11.1** Software tool types for parallel programming (Courtesy of Chang and Smith, 1990)

A basic environment provides a simple program tracing facility for debugging and performance monitoring or a graphic mechanism for specifying the task dependence graph in SCHEDULE, the process call graph in FAUST, and the process component graph in PIE.

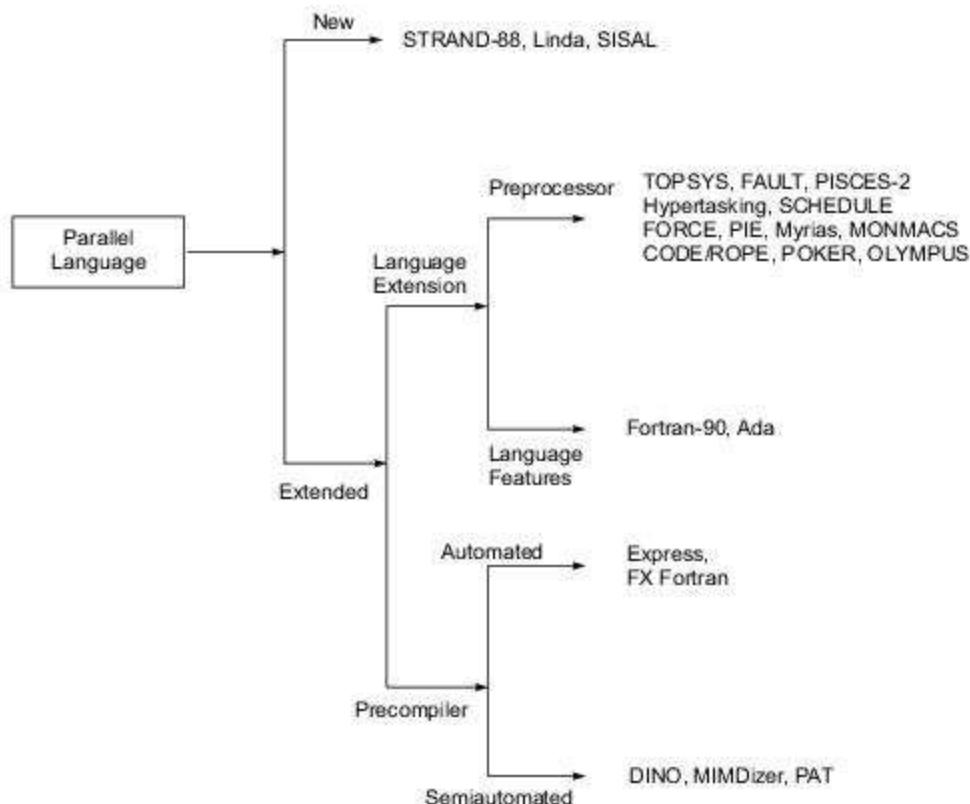
Limited integration provides tools for parallel debugging, performance monitoring, or program visualization beyond the capability of the basic environments listed. Well-developed environments provide intensive tools for debugging programs, interaction of textual/graphical representations of a parallel program, visualization support for performance monitoring, program visualization, parallel I/O, parallel graphics, etc.

The classification of a particular tool changes with time. For example, C-Linda and Fortran-Linda were developed to help C and Fortran programmers write parallel programs using the tuple spaces in Linda.

**Environment Features** In designing a parallel programming language, one often faces a dilemma involving *compatibility, expressiveness, ease of use, efficiency, and portability*. Parallel languages are developed either by introducing new languages such as Linda and Occam or by extending existing sequential languages such as Fortran 90, C\*, and Concurrent Pascal. A new parallel programming language has the advantage of using high-level parallel concepts or constructs for parallelism instead of using imperative (algorithmic) languages which are inherently sequential.

Most parallel computer designers choose the language extension approach to solving the compatibility problem. High-level parallel constructs were added to Fortran, C, Pascal, and Lisp to make them suitable for use on parallel computers. Special optimizing compilers are needed to automatically detect parallelism and transform sequential constructs into parallel ones.

High-level parallel constructs can be implicitly embedded in the syntax or explicitly specified by users. We have identified three compiler approaches:  *preprocessors*,  *precompilers*, and  *parallelizing compilers*, as illustrated in Fig. 11.2.



**Fig. 11.2** Parallel languages and compiler technology for parallel programming at different automation levels

Preprocessors, such as FORCE and MONMACS, use compiler directives or macroprocessors. Precompilers include automated Alliant FX Fortran compilers, the Express C automatic parallelizer, and semiautomated compilers such as DINO, PAT, and MIMDizer.

Some early parallel language approaches are differentiated in Fig. 11.2 based on the degree of compilation support developed. The categorization is by no means fixed. A language tool can be upgraded from the semiautomated category to the automated category if the compiler is upgraded. Several parallel programming tools are summarized in Table 11.1.

In addition to language/compiler development, a parallel programming environment must have supporting tools to facilitate the development and testing of parallel programs. Such an environment should provide software tool sets which can be applied to different phases of the program development cycle such as for editing, debugging, performance monitoring, and tuning.

**Table 11.1** Representative Parallel Programming Tools

| <i>Tool Name,<br/>Computing<br/>Model</i>               | <i>Language, OS, GUI<br/>and Environment<br/>Features</i>   | <i>Hardware<br/>Platform</i>                                      | <i>Applications<br/>Remarks and<br/>References</i>   |
|---|---|---|--|
| MIMDizer<br>shared-memory<br>message-passing<br>systems | Fortran, UNIX, VMS,<br>X-Window, SunView,<br>Do-loop parallelization<br>compiler directives, array<br>decomposition code<br>restructuring, message-<br>passing support. | X-MP, Y-MP, Cray 2,<br>iPSC, Sun, IRIS, NEC.                      | Scientific numerical<br>computations; Pacific<br>Sierra Research<br>Corp. [Harrison90]<br>and [PSR90]. |
| Express<br>message-passing<br>systems                   | Fortran 77, Fortran 90, C,<br>C++, UNIX, DOS,<br>X-Window, SunView,<br>code parallelization,<br>domain decomposition,<br>communication monitoring,<br>load balancing.   | iPSC, Y-MP, Sun,<br>nCUBE, PC,<br>Macintosh.                      | Scientific<br>(finite-element, etc.);<br>Parasoft Corp.<br>[Parasoft90].                               |
| C-Linda<br>tuple-space<br>protocol                      | C (Fortran called from C),<br>UNIX, X-Window, new<br>language extension to<br>parallel programming.   | iPSC/860, Y-MP,<br>Sun, IBM R6000,<br>Encore, Sequent,<br>Apollo. | Scientific and<br>distributed database<br>processing; Scientific<br>Computing Ass., Inc.<br>[Ahuja86]. |
| SCHEDULE<br>shared-memory<br>systems                    | Fortran, C, UNIX,<br>X-Window, SunView,<br>parallel algorithm<br>development and functional<br>parallelization.   | Cray 2, Encore,<br>Sequent, Alliant.                              | Scientific, numeric;<br>[Dongarra86], University<br>of Tennessee.                                      |

GUI = Graphics user interface.

Advances in visualization allow the programmer to visualize parallel computations through dynamic graphical animation of control flow and data flow patterns. Program visualization permits users to identify performance bottlenecks in a parallel program more easily than with a purely text-based interface.

**Summary** The important environment features are summarized below:

- (1) Control-flow graph generation.
- (2) Integrated textual/graphical map.
- (3) Parallel debugger at source code level.

- (4) Performance monitoring by either software or hardware means.
- (5) Performance prediction model.
- (6) Program visualizer for displaying program structures and data flow patterns.
- (7) Parallel input/output for fast data movement.
- (8) Visualization support for program development and guidance for parallel computations.
- (9) OS support for parallelism in front-end or back-end environments.
- (10) Communication support in a network environment.

### 11.1.2 Y-MP, Paragon and CM-5 Environments

The software and programming environments of the Cray Y-MP, Intel Paragon XP/S, and Connection Machine CM-5 are examined below. Readers can also refer to Chapter 13 and the plentiful material available on the web for additional information on these and other parallel computer environments.

**Cray Y-MP Software** The Cray Y-MP ran with the Cray operating systems UNICOS or COS. Two Fortran compilers, CFT77 and CFT, provided automatic vectorizing, as did C and Pascal compilers. Large library routines, program management utilities, debugging aids, and a Cray assembler were included in the system software. Communications and applications software were also provided by Cray, by a third party, or from the public domain.

UNICOS for Y-MP was written in C and was a time-sharing OS extension of UNIX. UNICOS supported optimizing, vectorizing, concurrentizing Fortran compilers and optimizing and vectorizing Pascal and C compilers. Besides interactive mode, it supported the Network Queueing System (NQS) for batch processing.

COS was a multiprogramming, multiprocessing, and multitasking OS. It offered a batch environment to the user and supported interactive jobs and data transfers through the front-end system. COS programs could run with a maximum of four processors up to 16M words of memory on the Y-MP system. Migration tools were available to ease conversion from COS to UNICOS.

We will describe three multiprocessing/multitasking methods—macrotasking, microtasking, and autotasking—in Section 11.2.3. The Cray Y-MP implemented all three methods and they could work together in a single program.

CFT77 was a multipass, optimizing, transportable compiler. It carried out vectorization and scalar optimization of Fortran 77 programs. The Cray assembler, CAL, enabled a user to tailor a program to the architecture of the Cray Y-MP.

Subroutine libraries contained various utilities, high-performance I/O subroutines, numerous math and scientific routines, and some special-purpose routines for communications and applications. A directory of applications software for Cray supercomputers was also made available.

**Intel Paragon XP/S Software** The Intel Paragon XP/S system was an extension of the Intel iPSC/860 and Delta systems. A summary of the XP/S system is given in Table 11.2. It was claimed to be a scalable, wormhole, mesh-connected multicomputer using distributed memory. The processing nodes used were 50-MHz i860 XP processors.

Paragon ran a distributed UNIX/OS based on OSF technology and was in conformance with POSIX, System V.3, and Berkeley 4.3BSD. The languages supported included C, Fortran, Ada, C++, and data-parallel Fortran.

**Table 11.2** Intel Paragon XP/S Multicomputer System

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Capacity                | 5–300 Gflops peak 64-bit results, 2.8–160 GIPS peak integer performance, node-to-node message routing at 200 Mbytes/s (full duplex), 1–128 Gbytes main memory, up to 500 Gbytes/s aggregate bandwidth, 6 Gbytes – 1 Tbyte internal disk storage, up to 6.4 Gbyte/s aggregate I/O bandwidth.                         |
| Node architecture       | Nodes based on Intel's 50 MHz i860 XP processor, 75 Mflops, 42 VAX MIPS peak per processor, 16–128 Mbytes DRAM per node.  |
| Operating system        | Distributed UNIX based on OSF technology, conformance with POSIX, System V.3, 4.3 BSD virtual memory, simultaneous batch and interactive operation.   |
| Programming environment | C, Fortran, Ada, C++, data-parallel Fortran, integrated tool suite with a Motif-based GUI, FORGE and CAST parallelization tools, Intel ProSolver parallel equation solvers, BLAS, NAG, SEGlib and other math libraries, interactive parallel debugger (IPD), hardware-aided performance visualization system (PVS). |
| Visualization           | X Window system, PEX, Distributed Graphics Library (DGL) client support, AVS and Explorer interactive visualizers, connectivity to HIPPI frame buffers.   |

Source: Intel Corporation, Supercomputer Systems Division, Beaverton, Oregon, 1991.

The integrated tool suite included FORGE and CAST parallelization tools, Intel ProSolver parallel equation solvers, and BLAS, NAG, SEGlib, and other math libraries. The programming environment provided an interactive parallel debugger (IPD) with a hardware-aided performance visualization system (PVS).

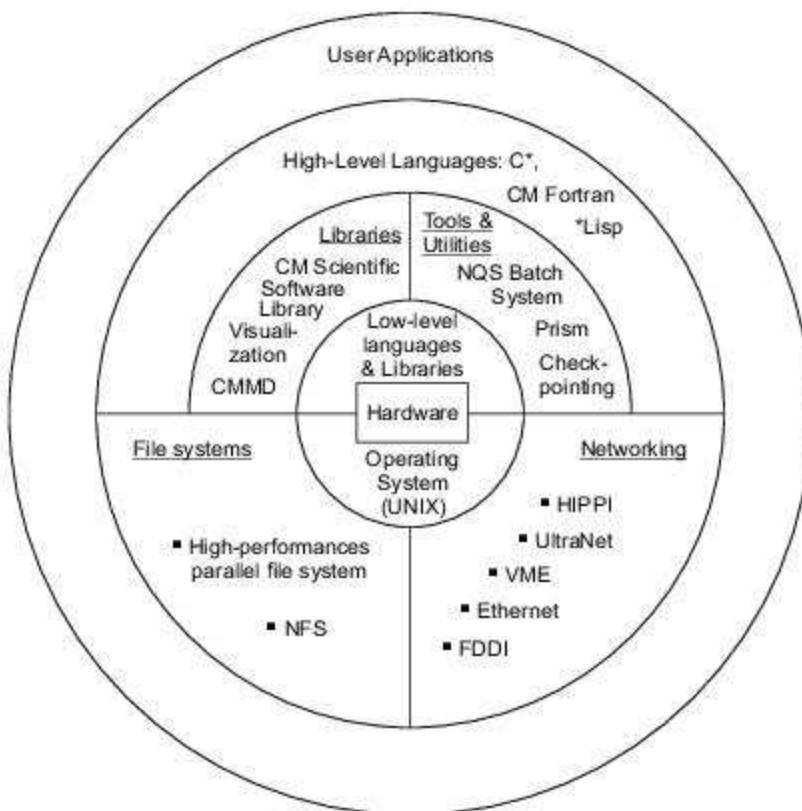
**CM-5 Software** The software support and programming environment for the CM-5 are introduced here. The CM-5 designers aimed at independent scalability of processing, communication, and I/O. This aim must necessarily be supported by extensive software, languages, and application libraries.

The software layers of the Connection Machine systems are shown in Fig. 11.3. The operating system used was CMOST, an enhanced version of UNIX/OS which supported time-sharing and batch processing. The low-level languages and libraries matched the hardware instruction-set architectures.

CMOST provided not only standard UNIX services but also supported fast IPC capabilities and data-parallel and other parallel programming models. It also extended the UNIX I/O environment to support parallel reads and writes and managed large files on data vaults.

The Prism programming environment was an integrated Motif-based graphical environment. Users could develop, execute, debug, and analyze the performance of programs with Prism, which could operate on terminals or workstations running the X-Window system.

High-level languages supported on the CM-5 included CM Fortran, C++, and \*Lisp. CM Fortran was based on standard Fortran 77 with array processing extensions of standard Fortran 90. CM Fortran also offered several extensions beyond Fortran 90, such as a FORALL statement and some additional intrinsic functions.



**Fig. 11.3** Software layers of the Connection Machine system (Courtesy of Thinking Machines Corporation, 1992)

C\* was an extension of the C programming language which supported data-parallel programming. Similarly, \*Lisp was an extension of the Common Lisp programming language for data-parallel programming. Both could be used to structure parallel data and to compute, communicate, and transfer data in parallel.

The CM Scientific Software Library included linear algebra routines, fast Fourier transforms, random number generators, and some statistical analysis packages. Data visualization was aided by an integrated environment including the CMXII library. CMMI was a CM message-passing library permitting concurrent processing in which synchronization occurs only between matched sending and receiving nodes.

### 11.1.3 Visualization and Performance Tuning

The performance of a parallel computer can be enhanced at several stages: At the machine design stage, the architecture and OS should be optimized to yield high resource utilization and maximum system throughput. At the algorithm design/data structuring stage, the programmer should match the software with the target hardware. At the compiling stage, the source code should be optimized for concurrency, vectorization, or

scalar optimization at various granularity levels. Finally, the compiled object code should go through further fine-tuning with the help of program profilers or run-time information.

**Visualization Support** We consider below performance tuning at the programming, compiling, and execution stages. To probe further, we add a few performance measures to reflect the resource utilization rate for a wide class of application programs. These measures are useful in predicting the performance and in performing program tuning in an interactive manner. Special program trace methods are needed for event monitoring in the performance tuning process. A special *graphics user interface* is required to support performance monitoring, prediction, and visualization.

In the I/O and program development areas, visualization is also needed. Performance tuning requires extensive software experiments with the help of GUI and utilization support. Tuning an operating system and an application program requires effort from both ends. System tuning involves the tuning of virtual memory and process priorities, such as adjusting the resident set size and scheduling policy.

Even the best computer architect cannot guarantee the performance of a system until the machine is tested by actually running real software programs. During the architecture design stage, simulation may be used to predict performance. However, simulation experiments are often biased or restricted by theoretical load characteristics.

During the compiling and execution stages, user programs can be modified either through programmer guidance or through the use of an intelligent compiler for automatic code transformations toward optimization or vectorization. Program modification can be extended all the way back to the algorithm design stage. Choosing better data structures can often make a big difference.

**Performance Tuning** If special hardware/software mechanisms are available, one can also collect run-time information, such as processor and memory utilization patterns, to guide the code transformation. One can also conduct a critical-path analysis of programs in order to reveal the bottleneck. Bottleneck removal or shortening the critical path through grain packing or other techniques can improve the system performance.

Besides measuring the MIPS, Mflops, or TPS rate, performance tuning may require a check of the CPU utilization rate, cache hit ratio, page fault rate, load index, synchronization frequency, memory-access pattern, OS/compiler overhead, and interprocessor communication or data movement delays. These measures reflect the degree of matching between software and hardware.

To tune a computer system for a given application, the gap between hardware and software must be closed. *Compiler directives* can be inserted to guide code optimization. Program profilers can be used to modify the object code in multiple passes through the compiler. Program tuning at run time must be assisted by program traces and event monitoring. These may require special hardware/software support. The purpose of these traces is to produce system control parameters for more efficient processor allocation, better memory utilization, higher cache hit ratios, fewer page faults, more efficient synchronization, and lower communication overhead.

Run-time program tuning is much more difficult to implement than compile-time tuning. However, the latter lacks run-time conditions, making it difficult to predict the performance accurately. Thus both compile-time and run-time techniques are needed in the performance tuning process.

## 11.2

# SYNCHRONIZATION AND MULTIPROCESSING MODES

Principles of various synchronization mechanisms for interprocess communication are studied first. Then we describe various modes for multiprocessing with shared memory.

### 11.2.1 Principles of Synchronization

The performance and correctness of a parallel program execution rely heavily on efficient synchronization among concurrent computations in multiple processors. As revealed in Chapter 6, both hardware and software mechanisms are needed to synchronize various granules of parallel operations.

The source of the synchronization problem is the sharing of writable objects (data or structures) among processes. Once a writable object permanently becomes read-only, the synchronization problem vanishes at that point. Synchronization consists of implementing the order of operations in an algorithm by observing the dependences for writable data. Shared object access in an MIMD architecture requires dynamic management at run time, which is much more complex than that of an SIMD architecture using lockstep to achieve synchronization at compile time.

Low-level synchronization primitives are often implemented directly in hardware. Resources such as the CPU, bus or network, and memory units may also be involved in synchronization of parallel computations.

We examine below *atomic operations*, *wait protocols*, *fairness policies*, *access order*, and *sole-access protocols*, based on the work of Bitar (1991), for implementing efficient synchronization schemes.

**Atomic Operations** Two classes of shared memory access operations are (1) an individual *read* or *write* such as  $\text{Register1} := x$  and (2) an indivisible *read-modify-write* such as  $x := f(x)$  or  $y := f(x)$ .

From the synchronization point of view, the order of program operations is described by *read-modify-write* operations over shared writable objects called *atoms*. An operation on an atom is called an *atomic operation*.

A hard atom is one whose access races are resolved by hardware such as Test&Set, whereas a soft atom is one whose access races are resolved by software such as a shared data structure protected by a Test&Set bit.

The atomicity of objects must be explicitly implemented by the software (on soft atoms), or the software must explicitly delegate the responsibility to the hardware (for hard atoms).

The execution of operations may be out of program order as long as the execution order preserves the meaning of the code. Three kinds of program dependences are identified below:

- *Data dependences*: WAR, RAW, and WAW as defined in Chapters 2 and 5.
- *Control dependences*: Program flow control statements such as *goto* and *if-then*.
- *Side-effect dependences*: Due to exceptions, traps, I/O accesses, time out, etc.

The correct execution order, as enforced by correct synchronization, must observe the program dependences. The atomicity of operations is maintained by observing dependences. Therefore, synchronized execution order must resolve any race conditions at run time.

**Wait Protocols** There are two kinds of *wait protocols* when the sole-access right is denied due to conflicts. In a *busy wait*, the process remains loaded in the processor's context registers and is allowed to continually retry. While it does consume processor cycles, the reason for using busy wait is that it offers a faster response when the shared object becomes available.

In a *sleep wait*, the process is removed from the processor and put in a wait queue. The process being suspended must be notified of the event it is waiting for. The system complexity increases in a multiprocessor using sleep wait as compared with those implementing busy wait.

When locks are used to synchronize processes in a multiprocessor, busy wait is used more often than sleep wait. Busy wait may offer a better performance if it entails less use of processors, memories, or network channels. If sleep-wait queues are managed using lock synchronization, it may be necessary for a process to wait for access to a sleep-wait queue.

Busy wait can be implemented with a self-service protocol by polling across the network, or with a full-service protocol by being notified across the network when the atom becomes available.

**Fairness Policies** Busy wait may reduce synchronization delay when the shared object becomes available. However, it wastes processor cycles by continually checking the object state and also may cause hot spots in memory access.

In sleep wait, the resources are better utilized, but a longer synchronization delay may result. For all suspended processes waiting in a queue, a *fairness policy* must be used to revive one of the waiting processes. Three fairness policies are summarized below:

- *FIFO*: The wait queue follows a first-in-first-out policy.
- *Bounded*: The number of turns a waiting process will miss is upper-bounded.
- *Livelock-free*: One waiting process will always proceed; not all will wait forever.

In general, the higher level of fairness corresponds to the more expensive implementation. Another concern is the prevention of deadlock among competing processes.

**Sole-Access Protocols** Conflicting atomic operations are serialized by means of *sole-access protocols*. Three synchronization methods are described below based on who updates the atom and whether sole access is granted before or after the atomic operations:

(1) *Lock Synchronization* In this method, the atom is updated by the requester process and sole access is granted before the atomic operation. For this reason, it is also called *pre-synchronization*. The method can be applied for shared read-only access. The lock granularity is a major issue in lock synchronization.

Most hardware-implemented locking applies to finer-grain physical units such as the memory module, cache, memory/cache block, etc. Lock mechanisms are described in Section 11.3.1.

(2) *Optimistic Synchronization* This method also updates the atom by the requester process. But sole access is granted after the atomic operation, as described below. It is also called *post-synchronization*. A process may secure sole access after first completing an atomic operation on a *local* version of the atom and then executing another atomic operation on the *global* version of the atom.

The second atomic operation determines if a concurrent update of the atom has been made since the first operation was begun. If a concurrent update has taken place, the global version is not updated; instead, the first atomic operation is aborted and restarted from the new global version.

The name *optimistic* is due to the fact that the method expects that there will be no concurrent access to the atom during the execution of a single atomic operation. This method was designed to eliminate the bottleneck created by a coarse-grain lock for the object of the first atomic operation.

This idea led to the concept of *optimistic concurrency* developed by Kung and Robinson (1981). Optimistic synchronization requires extra work in order to implement the global update operations, and the method also incurs a possible abortion cost.

(3) **Server Synchronization** This method updates the atom by the server process of the requesting process, as suggested by the name. Compared with lock synchronization and optimistic synchronization, *server synchronization* offers full service.

An atom has a unique update server. A process requesting an atomic operation on the atom sends the request to the atom's update server. The update server may be a specialized *server processor* (SP) associated with the atom's memory module.

Remote procedure calls and object-oriented or actor systems, in which shared objects are encapsulated by a process, provide examples of server synchronization. In a shared-memory multiprocessor using hard atoms, all three synchronization methods can be implemented, whereas only server synchronization is used in a message-passing multicomputer.

A soft atom occurs only under lock synchronization or optimistic synchronization. A specialized server processor must be used to implement server synchronization in a multiprocessor with a centralized shared memory.

In a message-passing system, the node processors with local memories can implement server synchronization without using additional server processors.

**Synchronization Environment** After learning about the principles of IPC and synchronization methods, we consider several implementation issues in developing parallel programs for multiprocessors.

Parallel program development hinges on how efficient synchronization is implemented with locks, semaphores, and monitors. We assess below various synchronization environments.

It is often desired to move the synchronization logic closer to the shared memory units in order to reduce bus traffic or network contention and CPU usage in the synchronization process. Such a synchronization environment may require the use of a server processor for coordinating the synchronization process and virtual memory management. The Cedar multiprocessor system has included this feature in globally shared memory units.

In general, synchronization controls the granularity of partitioned algorithms, affects the ease of writing correct programs, determines the fairness in selecting among competing processes, and ultimately influences the efficiency of parallel program execution. Special hardware and software support are needed to create an efficient and user-friendly environment.

Due to the dynamic run-time behavior, a poor synchronization environment may cause excessive waste in CPU cycles or network bandwidths, which otherwise could be more effectively used by other active processes. A poorly written parallel program may result in excessive synchronization that cancels all the advantages of parallelism. Therefore, an ideal synchronization environment should be jointly developed by designers and programmers.

### 11.2.2 Multiprocessor Execution Modes

Multiprocessor supercomputers are built for vector processing as well as for parallel processing across multiple processors. Multiprocessing modes include parallel execution from the fine-grain process level to the medium-grain task level, and to the coarse-grain program level.

In this section, we examine the programming requirements for intrinsic multiprocessing as well as for multitasking. Experiences using the Cray Y-MP are presented along with a programming example.

**Multiprocessing Requirements** Multiprocessing at the process level requires the use of shared memory in a tightly coupled system. Summarized below are special requirements for facilitating efficient multiprocessing:

- Fast context switching among multiple processes resident in processors.
- Multiple register sets to facilitate context switching.
- Fast memory access with conflict-free memory allocation.
- Effective synchronization mechanism among multiple processors.
- Software tools for achieving parallel processing and performance monitoring.
- System and application software for interactive users.

As machine size increases, the problems of communication overhead and effective exploitation of parallelism in a user program become more challenging. Meeting the challenges relies to a great extent on the development of system hardware and software support to free programmers from dealing with tedious program partitioning, parallel scheduling, memory consistency, and latency tolerance.

**Multitasking Environments** Three generations of multitasking software were developed by Cray Research, NEC, and other multiprocessor manufacturers. Multitasking exploits parallelism at several levels:

- Functional units are pipelined or chained together.
- Multiple functional units are used concurrently.
- I/O and CPU activities are overlapped.
- Multiple CPUs cooperate on a single program to achieve minimal execution time.

In a multitasking environment, the tasks and data structures of a job must be properly partitioned to allow parallel execution without conflict. However, the availability of processors, the order of execution, and the completion of tasks are functions of the run-time conditions of the machine. Therefore, multitasking is nondeterministic with respect to time.

On the other hand, tasks themselves must be deterministic with respect to results. To ensure successful multitasking, the user must precisely define and include the necessary communication and synchronization mechanisms and provide protection for shared data in critical sections.

Reentrancy is a useful property allowing one copy of a program module to be used by more than one task in parallel. Nonreentrant code can be used only once during the lifetime of the program. Reentrant code, if residing in the critical section, can be used in a serial fashion and is called *serially reusable code*.

Reentrant code, which is called many times by different tasks, must be assigned with local variables and control indicators stored in independent locations each time the routine is called. The standard and familiar stack mechanism has been employed in Cray multiprocessors to support reentrancy.

### 11.2.3 Multitasking on Cray Multiprocessors

Three levels of multitasking are described below for parallel execution on Cray X-MP or Y-MP multiprocessors. Multitasking tradeoffs are demonstrated by an example program execution.

**Macrotasking** When multitasking is conducted at the level of subroutine calls, it is called *macrotasking* with medium to coarse grains. Macrotasking has been implemented ever since the introduction of Cray X-MP systems. The concept of macrotasking is depicted in Fig. 11.4a.

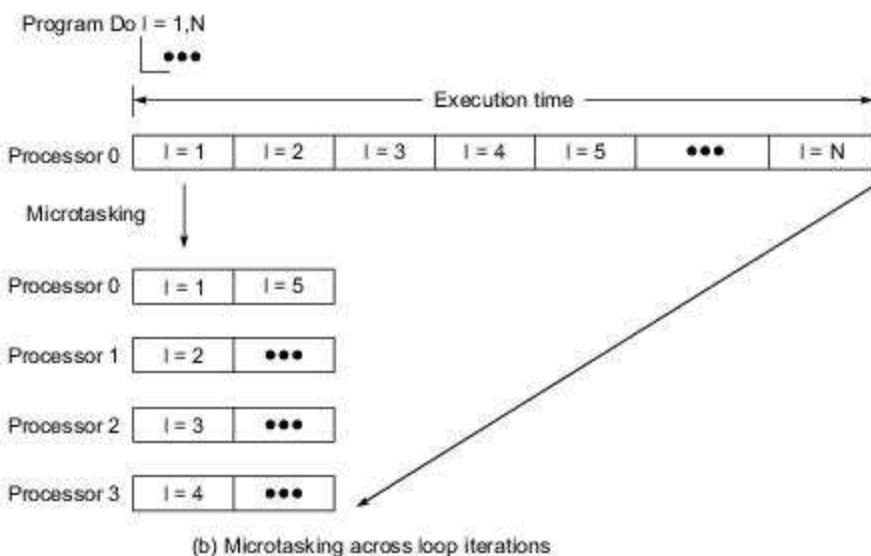
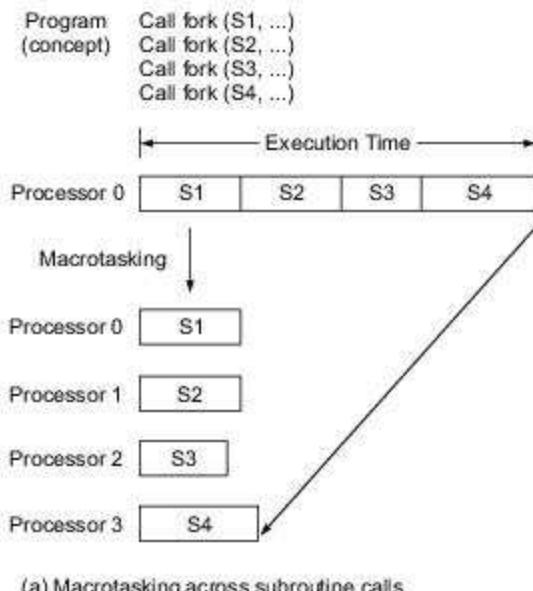


Fig. 11.4 Multitasking at two different processing levels

A main program forks a subroutine S1 and then forks out three additional subroutines S2, S3 and S4. Macrotasking is best suited to programs with larger, longer-running tasks. The program interface with the

Cray Y-MP system's macrotasking capability was a set of Fortran-callable subroutines that explicitly defined and synchronized tasks at the subroutine level.

The execution of these four subroutine calls on a uniprocessor (processor 0) is done sequentially. Macrotasking can spread the calls across four processors. Note that each processor may have a different execution time. However, the overall execution time is reduced due to parallel processing.

**Microtasking** This corresponds to multitasking at the loop control level with finer granularity. Compiler directives are often used to declare parallel execution of independent or dependent iterations of a looping program construct.

This technique was implemented in Alliant FX multiprocessors using the **Doacross** directive. Figure 11.4b illustrates the spread of every four instructions of a Do loop to four processors simultaneously through microtasking.

When the iterations are independent of each other, microtasking is easier to implement. When dependence does exist between the iterations, the system must resolve the dependence before parallel execution can be continued. Interprocessor communication is needed to resolve the dependences.

In addition to working efficiently on parts of programs where the granularity is small, microtasking works well when the number of processors available for the job is unknown or may vary during the program's execution. Additionally, in a batch environment where processors may become available for short periods, the microtasked job can dynamically adjust to the number of available processors.

**Autotasking** The autotasking feature automatically divides a program into discrete tasks for parallel execution on a multiprocessor. In the past, macrotasking was achieved by direct programmer intervention. Microtasking was aided by an interactive compiler.

Autotasking demands much higher degrees of automation. Only some Cray multiprocessors, like the Cray Y-MP and C-90, were provided with autotasking software. Some compiler or assembler directives were provided to allow programmers to fine-tune their code for better performance, especially in production environments.

It should be noted that through program fine-tuning, plus the use of autotasking software support, the above multitasking feature can improve both individual job performance and overall system throughput in a production environment.

At its highest capability, autotasking should be able to achieve fully automatic multiprocessing. It should allow user programs to be automatically partitioned over multiple processors (without user intervention). Autotasking is based on the microtasking design and shares several advantages with microtasking: very low overhead synchronization cost, excellent dynamic performance independent of the number of processors available, both large and small granularity parallelism, and so on. In addition to being fully automatic, autotasking exceeds microtasking in overall performance and in the various levels of parallelism that can be employed.

**Multitasking Tradeoffs** Speedup from multitasking may occur only when the time saved in executing parallel tasks outweighs the overhead penalty. The overhead is very sensitive to task granularity; it includes the initiation, management, and interaction of tasks. These are often accomplished by adding code to the original code, as exemplified below.



## Example 11.1 Macrotasking on a Cray X-MP dual-processor system (Courtesy of Cray Research, 1987)

This program can benefit from multitasking depending on the execution time of the subroutine SUB(J) and the overhead introduced in service routines. Before one attempts to convert serial code into multitasked code, the expected performance should be predicted to ensure a net gain.

Consider the sequential execution of the following code on an X-MP uniprocessor:

```

Program Main
:
Do 100 I = 1, 50
:
Do 10 J = 1, 2
    CALL SUB(J)
10     Continue
:
100    Continue
:
STOP
END

```

The 100 loop has dependent iterations which cannot be executed in parallel. The 10 loop has independent iterations which are being attempted for multitasking. The following multitasked code is written for a dual-processor X-MP.

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Program Main              |                          |
| Common/MT/IST, IDN, JOB   | SUBROUTINE T             |
| CALL TSKSTART (IDTASK, T) | Common/MT/IST, IDN, JOB  |
| JOB = 1                   | 101 CALL EVWAIT(IST)     |
| Do 100 I = 1, 50          | CALL EVCLEAR(IST)        |
| CALL EVPOST(IST)          | IF (JOB .NE. 1) GOTO 102 |
| CALL SUB(1)               | CALL SUB(2)              |
| CALL EVWAIT(IDN)          | CALL EVPOST(IDN)         |
| CALL EVCLEAR(IDN)         | GOTO 101                 |
| 100 Continue              | 102 RETURN               |
| JOB = 2                   | END                      |
| CALL EVPOST(IST)          |                          |
| CALL TSKWAIT(IDTASK)      |                          |
| STOP                      |                          |
| END                       |                          |

The execution of the sequential program on one CPU consists of two parts:

$\text{Time(1 CPU)} = \text{time(Seq)} + \text{time(SUB)} = (0.04 + 0.96) \times (20.83 \text{ s}) = 20.83 \text{ s}$  where  $\text{time(SUB)}$  accounts for the 96% of time spent in subroutine SUB, and  $\text{time(Seq)}$  for 4% spent on the remaining portion of the program. The total run time measured on one CPU was 20.83 s.

To execute the multitasked program on two CPUs requires

$$\text{Time (2 CPUs)} = \text{time (Seq)} + \frac{1}{2} \text{ time(SUB)} + \text{overhead}$$

The subroutine SUB was equally divided between two CPUs. This reduces  $\text{time(SUB)}$  by one-half. The overhead is estimated below with some approximation of the delays caused by workload imbalance and memory contention. The service routines TSKSTART, TSKWAIT, EVPOST, EVCLEAR, and EVWAIT were used in the Cray X-MP to establish the multitasking structure.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Overhead} &= \text{time(TSKSTART)} + \text{time(TSKWAIT)} + 51 \times \text{time(EVPOST)} \\ &\quad + (\text{workload imbalance delay}) + (\text{memory contention delay}) \\ &= 1500 \text{ CP} + 1500 \text{ CP} + 51 \times 1500 \text{ CP} + 50 \times 200 \text{ CP} + \\ &\quad 50 \times 1500 \text{ CP} + (0.02 \times 50 \times 0.2 \text{ s}) = 0.216 \text{ s}\end{aligned}$$

where the CP (clock period) is equal to 9.5 ns. Therefore,

$$\text{Time (2 CPUs)} = (0.4 \times 20.83) + \frac{1}{2} \times (0.96 \times 20.83) + 0.216 = 11.05 \text{ s.}$$

We thus project the following speedup:

$$\text{Speedup} = \frac{\text{time (1 CPU)}}{\text{time (2 CPUs)}} = \frac{20.83}{11.02} = 1.88$$

This speedup helps decide whether multitasking is worthwhile. The actual speedup of this program as measured by Cray programmers was 1.86. This indicates that the above prediction is indeed very close.

Factors affecting performance include task granularity, frequency of calls, balanced partitioning of work, and programming skill in the choice of multitasking mechanisms.

Multitasking offers a speedup which is upper-bounded by the number of processors in a system. Because vector processing offers a greater speedup potential over scalar processing (in the Cray X-MP, vectorization offered a speedup in the range of 10 to 20), multitasking should not be employed at the expense of vectorization.

In the case of a short vector length, scalar processing may outperform vector processing. In the case of a small task size, vector processing (or even scalar processing) may outperform multitasking.

Both scalar and vector codes may be multitasked, depending on the granularity and the overhead. For coarse-grain computations with reasonably low overhead (as in the above example), multitasking is appropriate and advantageous.

## 11.3

### SHARED-VARIABLE PROGRAM STRUCTURES

We describe below the use of spin locks, suspend locks, binary and counting semaphores, and monitors for shared-variable programming. These mechanisms can be used to implement

various synchronization methods among concurrent processes. Shared-variable constructs are also used in OS kernel development for protected access to certain kernel data structures.

### 11.3.1 Locks for Protected Access

Lock and unlock mechanisms are described below using shared variables among multiple processes. *Binary locks* are used globally among multiple processes. *Spin locks* are based on a time-slot concept. *Dekker's locks* are based on using distributed requests jointly with a spin lock. Special multiprocessor instructions are needed to implement these locking mechanisms.

**Spin Locks** The entrance and exit of a CS can be controlled by a binary *spin lock* mechanism in which the gate is protected by a single binary variable  $x$ , which is shared by all processes attempting to enter the CS.



#### Example 11.2 Definition of a binary spin lock

The gate variable  $x$  is initially set to 0, corresponding to the *open* status. Each process  $P_i$  is allowed to test the value of  $x$  until it becomes 0. Then it can enter the CS. The gate must be *closed* by setting  $x = 1$  after entering.

|                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Shared var $x$ : (0,1)  | /The spin lock/                 |
| $x := 0$                | /The CS is open initially/      |
| Process $P_i$ for all i |                                 |
| Repeat                  |                                 |
| :                       | /Spinning with busy wait/       |
| Until $x = 0$           |                                 |
| $x := 1$                | /Close gate after entry/        |
| :                       | /The critical section/          |
| $x := 0$                | /Open gate after done and exit/ |

After the CS is completed, the gate is reopened. A busy-wait protocol is used in spin locks. Test and set of lock variable value must be indivisible to prevent simultaneous entries into the CS by multiple processes.



#### Example 11.3 Definition of a generalized spin lock with $n$ possible values

One way to guarantee mutually exclusive entry is to use a *generalized spin lock* with  $n$  processes as defined below. The gate variable  $x$  is allowed to assume  $n$  integer values ( $1, 2, \dots, n$ ). The fact that  $x = i$  implies that the gate is open only to process  $P_i$ .

```

Shared var x: (1, 2, 3, ..., n) /The spin lock/
x := 1                      /The CS is initially open to process P1/
Process Pi for all i = 1, 2, ..., n - 1
  Repeat
    :
    Until x = i
    :
    x := i + 1
  Process Pn                                /The last process/
  Repeat
    :
    Until x = n
    :
    x := 1

```

/Spinning with busy wait/  
 /Entry/  
 /The critical section/  
 /Exit/  
 /Exit and return to P<sub>1</sub>/

Initially, the lock is open to  $P_1$ . After  $P_1$  finishes with the CS, the gate is open to  $P_2$ , and so on. The last process  $P_n$  will reset the lock to  $x = 1$ .

This solution guarantees mutual exclusion at the expense of longer waiting times. The processes must wait even if there are no conflicting requests at the same time.

**Dekker's Protocol** To guarantee mutual exclusion without unnecessary waiting, Dekker has suggested the use of separate request variables by different processes along with the use of a spin lock.



#### Example 11.4 Dekker's protocol for protected access to a critical section by two processes

The following program shows Dekker's solution for two processes. Each process uses a request variable ( $p_i$ ) to indicate if it wishes to be *inside* (1) or *outside* (0) the CS. When both processes indicate the same wish to be inside, a spin lock ( $x = 1$  or 2) is used to resolve the conflict.

```

var p1, p2: (inside, outside)
Shared var x: (1, 2)
x := 1 /The CS is initially open to process P1/
p1 := outside; p2 := outside
Process 1
p1 := inside
if p2 = inside then
begin
  if x = 2 then
    Process 2
    p2 := inside
    if p1 = inside then
      begin
        if x = 1 then

```

```

begin
    p1 := outside
    Repeat until x = 1
        p1 := inside
    end
    Repeat
        until p2 = outside
    end
    : /The critical section/
    x := 2 /Open to process 2/
    p1 := outside;
begin
    p2 := outside
    Repeat until x = 2
        p2 := inside
    end
    Repeat
        until p1 = outside
    end
    : /The critical section/
    x := 1 /Open to process 1/
    p2 := outside

```

This scheme avoids unnecessary waiting delays whenever there is no conflicting request. The generalization of Dekker's method to a large number of processes is very cumbersome and also expensive to implement (see Problem 11.2).

**Suspend Locks** These types of locks use the sleep-wait protocol. A process blocked from entering a CS is removed from the processor's ready-to-run queue. Instead, the suspended process is put in a wait queue. When the suspend lock is opened, one of the suspended processes in the wait queue is reactivated using one of the fairness policies.

Spin locks or suspend locks can be implemented in a multiprocessor system using special instructions such as Test&Set, Fetch&Add, and Compare&Swap, depending on the atomic operations supported by the hardware in a given computer.

The  $\text{Test\&Set}(x, y_i)$  instruction operates on two boolean variables: The spin lock  $x$  is shared by multiple processes, and the local condition variable  $y_i$  indicates the *outside* (0) and *inside* (1) wishes of process  $P_i$ . As an atomic action, this instruction sets  $y_i$  to the old value of the lock  $x$  and closes the lock (1) as follows:

$\text{Test\&Set}(x, y_i):$   
 $\langle y_i := x; \quad x := 1 \rangle$

If both processes simultaneously wish to enter the CS, only one can succeed in *closing* the spin lock  $x$  and thus mutual exclusion is guaranteed.



### Example 11.5 Test&Set implementation of Dekker's protocol for accessing a critical section

Shared var x: (0, 1)  
var y1, y2: (0, 1)  
Process 1  
if y1 = 1 then Test&Set(x, y1)

```

if y1 = 1 then Test&Set(x, y2)
:
x := 0           /The critical section/
:
if y2 = 1 then Test&Set(x, y1)
if y2 = 1 then Test&Set(x, y1)
:
x := 0           /Exit/
:
/Noncritical section/

```

Process 2

```

if y2 = 1 then Test&Set(x, y2)
if y2 = 1 then Test&Set(x, y1)
:
x := 0           /The critical section/
:
/Noncritical section/

```

The Test&Set instruction can be used to implement Dekker's protocol, as shown in the above program in which  $y_i$  corresponds to the request variable  $p_i$  from process  $i$  for  $i = 1$  and 2, respectively.

### 11.3.2 Semaphores and Applications

Spin locks using the busy-wait protocol may cause excessive waiting in a multiprogrammed multiprocessor system. Eliminating busy waiting in processes would make better use of the resources if a process blocked from entering a CS goes to sleep and is awakened when the CS is opened.

This improves processor utilization. Instead of using processors to execute a spinning process, they could be used more productively in executing other ready-to-run processes. *Semaphores* were developed as an improvement on the sleep-wait protocol.

**Binary Semaphores** Critical sections can be viewed as sections of railroad track. *Semaphores* are control signals for avoiding collisions between trains (processes) on the same track section (CS). Dijkstra (1968) introduced the use of binary semaphores for the management of concurrent processes seeking to access CSs.

A *binary semaphore*  $s$  is a boolean variable taking the value of 0 or 1. Each shared resource or CS can be associated with a dedicated semaphore. Only two atomic operations (primitives),  $P$  and  $V$ , are used to access the CS represented by the semaphore apart from initialization by setting  $s = 1$ .

- The  $P(s)$  operation causes the value of the semaphore  $s$  to be decreased by 1 if  $s$  is not already 0; process is granted access to resource or CS. Otherwise, process enters wait state.
- The  $V(s)$  operation causes the value of the semaphore  $s$  to be increased by 1 if  $s$  is not already 1; process releases the resource or exits CS.

The physical meaning of  $s = 1$  is the availability of a single copy of the resource represented by  $s$ . On the other hand,  $s = 0$  means the resource is being occupied. When the resource is a CS, a binary semaphore corresponds essentially to a gate or lock variable used in the sleep-wait protocol.

**Counting Semaphores** A *counting semaphore*  $s$  is a nonnegative integer taking  $(n + 1)$  possible values 0, 1, 2, ...,  $n$  for some integer  $n \geq 1$ . Therefore a binary semaphore corresponds to the special case of  $n = 1$ . A counting semaphore with a maximum value of  $n$  acts as a collection of  $n$  permits corresponding to the use of  $n$  copies of a shared resource.

A shared resource can be a program segment, a data table, or any passive device such as memory or I/O resources. A permit is issued upon each request until all copies are taken. Formally, we define  $P(s)$  and  $V(s)$  on counting semaphores as follows:

- $P(s)$ : If  $s > 0$ , then  $s := s - 1$ ; else suspend the execution of the current process and place it in a wait queue.
- $V(s)$ :  $s := s + 1$ . If the wait queue is not empty, then wake up one of the processes.

Intuitively, the operation  $P(s)$  corresponds to the submission of a request for a permit.  $V(s)$  corresponds to the return of a permit after a process finishes using a copy of the resource. Note that both operators are atomic. If the maximum value of a counting semaphore ( $s = n$ ) has already been reached, the  $V(s)$  operation will not increase the value of  $s$  beyond the upper bound  $n$ .

**System Deadlock** *System deadlock* refers to the situation in a multiprocessor when concurrent processes are holding resources and preventing each other from completing their execution.

In general, a deadlock can be prevented if one or more of the following four necessary conditions are removed:

- (1) *Mutual exclusion*—Each process has exclusive control of its allocated resources.
- (2) *Non-preemption*—A process cannot release its allocated resources until completion.
- (3) *Hold and wait*—Processes can hold resources while waiting for additional resources.
- (4) *Circular wait*—Multiple processes wait for each other's resources in a circular dependence situation.

**Shared-Resource Allocation**  $P$ - $V$  operators and semaphores can be used to allocate and deallocate shared resources in a multiprocessor to avoid deadlock among concurrent processes.



## Example 11.6 Resource allocation using P-V operators to prevent deadlock

Four processes are sharing six resources in the process declaration shown in Fig. 11.5a. The six resource types are represented by binary semaphores  $S_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, 6$ . Allocation of the resource  $S_i$  to process  $P_j$  is requested by  $P(S_i)$ , and the release of resource  $S_i$  is requested by  $V(S_i)$ . The resource request-release pattern of each process  $P_j$  for  $j = 1, 2, 3, 4$  is shown by a column of such  $P$ - $V$  pairs.

All four processes can submit their requests asynchronously. It is the request ordering that leads to deadlock. The release ordering does not make any difference.

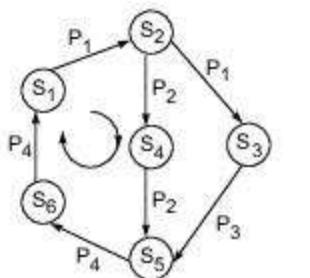
The *resource allocation graph* shown in Fig. 11.5b is a directed graph where the nodes correspond to the six resource types. An edge with the label  $P_k$  from node  $S_i$  to node  $S_j$  means process  $P_k$  is requesting resource  $S_j$  while holding resource  $S_i$ .

A cycle,  $S_1 \rightarrow S_2 \rightarrow S_4 \rightarrow S_5 \rightarrow S_6 \rightarrow S_1$ , in Fig. 11.5b implies the possibility of a *circular wait* among processes  $P_1, P_2$ , and  $P_4$ . To break the deadlock possibility, one can modify the resource request pattern in process 4 as shown in the fifth column.

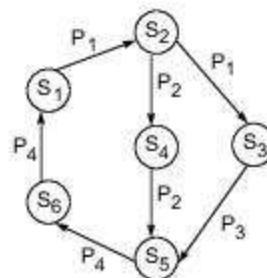
A new allocation graph results in Fig. 11.5c, where no cycle exists after reversing the edge between  $S_1$  and  $S_6$ . Of course, this reversing should not invalidate the demand by process 4.

| Process 1 | Process 2 | Process 3 | Process 4 | Process 4<br>(Modified) |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------------------|
| •         | P(S2)     | •         | •         | •                       |
| P(S1)     | •         | P(S3)     | •         | P(S1)                   |
| •         | P(S4)     | •         | P(S5)     | •                       |
| P(S2)     | •         | P(S5)     | •         | •                       |
| •         | P(S5)     | •         | P(S6)     | P(S6)                   |
| P(S3)     | •         | •         | •         | •                       |
| •         | •         | •         | P(S1)     | P(S5)                   |
| •         | V(S5)     | •         | •         | •                       |
| •         | •         | V(S5)     | •         | •                       |
| •         | •         | •         | V(S6)     | V(S6)                   |
| V(S1)     | V(S4)     | •         | V(S1)     | V(S5)                   |
| •         | •         | V(S3)     | V(S5)     | V(S1)                   |
| V(S2)     | •         | •         | •         | •                       |
| V(S3)     | V(S2)     | •         | •         | •                       |
| •         | •         | •         | •         | •                       |

(a) Four concurrent processes



(b) Resource allocation graph with circular wait.



(b) Modified resource allocation graph without circular wait.

Fig. 11.5 Shared resource allocation using P-V operators to prevent system deadlock (Reprinted from Hwang, Proc. IEEE, 1987)

**Deadlock Avoidance** Static prevention as outlined above may result in poor resource utilization. Dynamic deadlock avoidance depends on the run-time conditions, which may introduce a larger overhead in detecting the potential existence of a deadlock.

Although dynamic detection may lead to better resource utilization, the tradeoff in detection and recovery costs must be considered before choosing between static and dynamic methods.

Most parallel computers have a static prevention method due to its simplicity of implementation. Sophisticated dynamic avoidance or a recovery scheme for the deadlock problem requires one to minimize the incurred costs to justify the net gains. Breaking a deadlock problem by aborting some noncritical processes should result in a minimum recovery cost.

A meaningful analysis of the recovery costs associated with various options is difficult. This is the main reason why sophisticated deadlock recovery mechanisms have not been built into most multiprocessors.

The *P* and *V* operators are usually implemented by the underlying operating system kernel. They can also be implemented by special hardware or by software traps. Spin locks and *P-V* operators are both low-level, fine-grain, atomic operations which are more often used in system programming than in user programming. Only binary semaphores are used in controlling a CS. Counting semaphores are used in the deadlock-free allocation of shared resources with multiple copies each.

The main problem is that such low-level operations are error-prone and not appealing to ordinary programmers who enjoy the simplicity of using high-level language.

### 11.3.3 Monitors and Applications

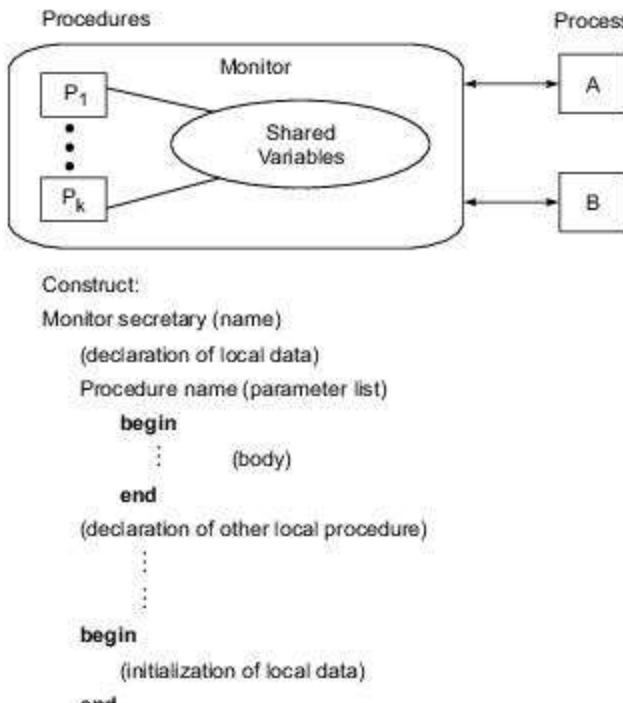
In using locks or semaphores to define critical sections, shared variables are global to all processes. CSs are embodied within processes, which may be scattered throughout the entire program. This may pose some problems in program modularization or debugging, which in turn limits parallelism.

Hoare (1974) proposed a *monitor* construct for structuring an operating system. We describe below the structure of monitors for parallel programming applications.

**Monitor Structure** A *monitor* is a high-level program construct for structured programming that emphasizes modularity and encapsulation. As shown in Fig. 11.6, a monitor collects shared variables and associated procedures into a single construct which allows only one process access at a time.

A typical monitor consists of the following three parts: The first part defines the monitor name and declares all local variables to be used. The second part is a collection of procedures using the variables declared. The third part is for the initialization of all local variables.

In a monitor, the CSs are removed from the bodies of user programs and become procedures or functions defined over variables confined within the boundary of the monitor. A process invokes the appropriate procedure within the monitor when it wishes to enter the desired CS. Instead of providing individual process management, a monitor behaves like a secretary in an office who provides services to a number of persons (processes). Each program can declare and use as many monitors as required.



**Fig. 11.6** The structure of a monitor for structured programming

**Producer-Consumer Implementation** The monitor procedures should not access any nonlocal variables outside the monitor. An example monitor for implementing the *procedure-consumer* problem is shown below:



### Example 11.7 Monitor for a producer process and a consumer process

In this monitor, two procedures are defined over the declared local variables. The producer process sends messages that are received by the consumer process. The communication between producer and consumer is handled by the *deposit* and *fetch* procedures defined below:

Monitor Producer-Consumer  
 Buffer[0:n-1]: integer  
 Inpointer, Outpointer: integer  
 Not full , Notempty: Buffer conditions  
 Count: integer index

```
Procedure Deposit(I)
begin
    if Count = n then wait(Notfull)
    Buffer(Inpointer) := I
    Inpointer := (Inpointer + 1) mod n
    Count := Count + 1
    signal (Notempty)
end

Procedure Fetch(I)
begin
    if Count = 0 then wait(Notempty)
    I := Buffer(Outpointer)
    Outpointer := (Outpointer + 1) mod n
    Count := Count - 1
    signal (Notfull)
end

begin
    Inpointer := 0
    Outpointer := 0
    Count := 0
end
```

The deposit procedure appends to or inserts messages into the communication buffer. The fetch procedure takes or fetches messages for the consumer. The producer process calls the deposit procedure for service, and the consumer process calls the fetch procedure for service.

Only one process (either producer or consumer) can call the desired procedure at a time. A monitor is not itself a process. A monitor is a static module of data and procedure declarations. The producer and consumer are active processes which must be programmed separately as shown below:

| Producer   | Consumer   |
|------------|------------|
| I: integer | I: integer |
| repeat     | repeat     |
| begin      | begin      |
| Produce(I) | Fetch(I)   |
| Deposit(I) | Consume(I) |
| end        | end        |

**Monitor Applications** All the operations of semaphores can be simulated by monitors, and vice versa. Monitors have been suggested for use in a number of parallel programming applications.

Brinch-Hansen (1977) used monitors for Concurrent Pascal programming. In general, a parallel program may contain two different kinds of program modules: *active processes* and *passive monitors*. As in the producer-consumer example, all shared variables are defined within the monitors; interprocess communications are handled by calling procedures in the same monitor. Different groups of processes may use different monitors (secretaries) for different types of services (procedures) which may require special shared resources (local variables).

Several distinct advantages are observed in using monitors to support IPC or interprocessor synchronization. First, all dedicated services (procedures) are placed together within each monitor. Therefore, a calling process can be freed from worrying about these procedure details. Second, the monitor designer does not have to worry about how many user processes may access it. Third, monitors provide modularity in program debugging and maintenance.

For example, one can program a disk scheduler as a dedicated monitor. All user processes can submit requests to the disk scheduler, and only one is serviced by a driver procedure at a time. Monitors hide information within their boundaries, which implies the potential for concurrent object-oriented programming and efficient handling of abstract data types. Programs using monitors are not only easier to debug but also are easier to use in exploiting parallelism. The localization of shared variables is an important asset in concurrent programming.

Monitors can be implemented directly with data and procedure declarations, or indirectly through the use of semaphores such as using *P-V* primitives to declare the entry and exit of a monitor. Monitors can also be implemented with the help of a kernel of data structures and routines. A monitor kernel may include special primitives for *entry*, *wait*, and *signal* operations. Wirth (1977) proposed a Modula kernel for implementing monitors when using the language for parallel programming.

## 11.4

## MESSAGE-PASSING PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT

Multicomputer programming demands the distribution of computational load and data structures to various node processors for balanced parallel processing. Message-passing paradigms are needed for internode communications. Over the last two decades, message-passing has gained importance as a means of achieving distributed computing.

Three program/data decomposition techniques, namely, *domain*, *control*, and *object decomposition*, are presented for programming a multicomputer. In each case, example problems are given to illustrate the decomposition technique involved.

### 11.4.1 Distributing the Computation

The key to using a multicomputer system is to distribute the computations among an ensemble of computer (processor-memory) nodes. Each node executes its own program, and all nodes are interconnected by a network. Concurrent processes created at different nodes communicate by passing messages. In this section, we assess the basic programming environment for multicomputers. We study program tuning to achieve load balancing directed toward higher performance.

**Host and Node Environments** The programming environment of a multicomputer may include an optional host run-time system and resident operating systems in all node computers.

For example, a Cosmic Environment was developed for the hypercube computer at Caltech. The host environment was a UNIX processor and used UNIX and language processor utilities to communicate with the node processes and other host processes through messages.

A separate OS kernel was located in each node computer that supported multiprogramming, with an address space confined to local memory. Many node processes could be created at each node. In fact, the total number of node processes could be greater than the number of node computers in the system.

All node processes executed concurrently in different physical nodes or interleaved through multiprogramming within the same node. Node processes communicated with each other by sending or receiving messages.

The *Cosmic kernel* (later modified to the Reactive Kernel) at Caltech was one such node operating system that supported this process-model programming.

There were no shared variables between node processes in the Cosmic kernel, even if they resided in the same node. The node processes did not have access to input/output devices, and all I/O activities were handled by the hosts.

The Cosmic Cube programming environment did not use new programming languages. Existing sequential programming languages such as C, Pascal, Fortran, Lisp, Assembly, etc. were used to write process codes. A library of C functions and procedures was developed to control message-passing and process-spawning operations.

This approach used explicit parallelism built on top of existing compiler technology. Many interesting Cosmic features were built into or modified in commercial systems such as the Intel iPSC and nCUBE computers. Various multicomputer programming environments differ mainly in the languages and message-passing paradigms used.

In programming a multicomputer, the process involves separation of the user interface from the computational kernel, leaving the user interface on the host or a designated node, moving the kernel to each node, and adding a message interface between them.

In order to distribute the computation, the programmer chooses a decomposition method and then maps the decomposition to all the nodes. A node-to-node communication protocol must be established. Finally, one needs to balance the load and reduce the communication/computation ratio.

**Message Types and Parameters** Example 10.1 demonstrated the need for message passing. In a multicomputer program, a process must distinguish between a number of different message types. A particular field of all messages can be reserved to carry a *message type* (identified by an integer).

Different message types may demand different actions by the sending or receiving processes. Messages of different types are handled in a specific order. For example, the Cosmic Environment/Reactive Kernel dispatched messages according to the types received, and supported customized message functions on top of the X-window primitives.

Let us examine the basic message parameters associated with *send* and *receive* system calls. The message-passing primitives are specified by:

*send (type, buffer, length, node, process)*

*receive (type, buffer, length)*

where *type* identifies the message type, *buffer* indicates the location of the message, *length* specifies the length of the message (in bytes), *node* designates the destination node, and *process* is the process ID at the destination node.

The *send* and *receive* primitives are used by the sending and receiving processes, respectively. Therefore, the buffer field in *send* specifies the memory location of the message to be retrieved from. On the other hand, the buffer field in *receive* specifies where the arriving message will be stored.

Once stored in a local memory, a message can be retrieved only by the local processor. No remote memory access is allowed in a pure message-passing multicomputer. The implementation requirements of the two message-passing models are studied below.

#### 11.4.2 Synchronous Message Passing

The message-passing process involves a sender and one or more receiver(s). When a process sends a message, the system must decide a number of issues: first, whether the receiver should cooperate or be ready to receive it; second, whether the communication path has been established or not; and third, whether one or more messages can be sent to the same destination node or to multiple destinations.

In a synchronous communication network, the sender process and receiver process must be synchronized in time and space. Time synchronization means both processes must be ready before message transmission can take place. Space synchronization demands the availability of a communication path, i.e. a sequence of connected channels from source to destination.

The simplest implementation allows only one message on a communication channel at a time. No buffers are used in such a communication network. Therefore, blocking is possible if the channel requested is busy or in error. For this reason, synchronous message passing belongs to the class of blocking communication systems. The correct protocol must be adopted to ensure the coupling of the sender and receiver in time and space. Blocking may take place very often in such a network. How to minimize the delays caused by blocking is a major issue to be considered.

Synchronous message handling simply ignores blocked messages, assuming no buffers are used with the communication channels. This scheme has been implemented as one of two possible message-handling modes in the Intel iPSC systems. The idea is to halt further execution of instructions in a process until the desired message is sent or received.

When a process issues a request to receive a message, the process, being blocked, executes no further instructions until the expected message has been received. If the message arrives ahead of the request, the receiver will wait only until the message is copied into the local memory from the system buffer in which it was temporarily stored.

Similarly, when a sender initiates a message transfer, the sending process is blocked until the message is copied from local memory into the message-passing network by the node kernel. Synchronous message handling is easier to implement but may not result in the highest performance possible in a given network.

**The Ada Experience** Example synchronous message-passing programming systems include the unbuffered Ada system, which uses a *rendezvous* concept to synchronize the sender with the receiver. In such a system, the early arrival at the rendezvous must wait for the late arrival. Ada uses a *name-addressing* scheme in which (Node, PID) is used to identify a process residing at a node.

The Ada system allows two-way data flow during a single rendezvous. A process calls another process by name without divulging its own identity. Ada implements a *select* primitive, which allows a process (task) to conditionally select an entry call to execute among multiple entries.

Programming with the rendezvous concept can easily implement a *remote procedure call* (RPC) besides the *select* option. It also supports dynamic task creation and priorities in task selection.

**The Occam Experience** The CSP (communicating sequential processes) model proposed by Hoare employs a selective synchronous scheme based on a tightly synchronized form of message passing. In 1988 CSP was modified and called the Occam system by INMOS/Transputer developers, based on a *channel-addressing* scheme. This scheme established a communication path between sender and receiver by directional channel tracing. The Occam system used one-way data flow.

In a synchronous message-passing system, the number of completed *receive* operations is identical to the number of completed *send* operations at the other end. The blocking problem can be avoided or alleviated using buffers in the message-passing network.

Buffering is like a telephone system with an answering machine or like a fax machine. The sender and receiver do not have to be available at the same time, and yet they can communicate with each other.

#### 11.4.3 Asynchronous Message Passing

This programming paradigm requires the use of buffers on communication channels or the use of a global mailbox. Message sending and receiving do not have to be synchronized in time or space. Nonblocking communication is possible if sufficiently large buffers are used along the communication channels.

Blocked messages are buffered for later transmission. This system is like a postal service system using many mailboxes as buffers. No synchronization is needed because the sender does not have to know if and when a message is received. The receiver expecting a message will not be suspended from regular execution.

Even when we consider a buffered asynchronous system nonblocking, the system may eventually be blocked due to the use of limited-size channel buffers. If the network traffic is not heavy or saturated, moderate-size buffers will lead to essentially nonblocking communications. Most advanced message-passing networks use asynchronous communications for the sake of better resource utilization and shorter communication delays. An arbitrary delay may result in a buffered communication scheme under very heavy load.

Caltech's Cosmic programming environment supported asynchronous message passing. Intel's iPSC system also supported asynchronous message handling. Asynchronous *receives* allow processes to alert the node kernel that certain messages are expected and should be delivered as soon as they arrive.

In the meantime, the receiving process can continue its work if needed. An asynchronous *send* allow a sender to alert the kernel that it wants to send a message, but the process does not wait until the message is sent. Obviously, asynchronous communication is more efficient and sometimes faster.

**The Linda Experience** The *Linda* programming system also operates asynchronously. Uncoupling of the sender and receiver in time and space is expected. Linda is based on a global mailbox or bulletin-board concept for achieving asynchronous communications. This is done through the use of a *tuple space*, which is logically shared by all concurrent processes.

The tuple space consists of *tuples*, which are typed data sequences. Any process can add a tuple to the shared tuple space or remove a matching tuple from the space. If no match is found, the process suspends until a match is found later. It can also read a copy of a matching tuple without removing it from the space.

In many ways, the tuple space behaves like a bulletin board where anybody can add a notice (tuple), read a notice, or remove a notice. The tuple space, therefore, becomes a global mailbox which can be accessed by all processes for the purpose of either sending, broadcasting, or receiving messages (tuples).

Concurrent programming works in Linda by pattern matching on the tuple signatures (tag fields). The concept of tuple space can be implemented on either shared-memory multiprocessors or distributed-memory multic平者.

**Interrupt and Lost Messages** Interrupt messages are a special form of asynchronous message handling. Instead of continuing working while waiting for a regular message to arrive, interrupt handling is carried out immediately by the receiver without having the receiving process post a *receive* when it is ready to receive. After the interrupt is serviced, the interrupted process may resume its original work.

Messages are often lost in a message-passing system. When an incoming message is not expected or needed, it may be ignored and thus lost. Messages directed to the wrong process or wrong node will not be found or retrieved by the intended process, and the node kernel may not be able to cope with the problem.

These messages may end up in the system message buffers and eventually be lost. This may not be the fault of a programmer. Special detection aid or debugging tools are needed to inspect message buffers and to correct possible system configuration or programming errors.

## 11.5

## MAPPING PROGRAMS ONTO MULTICOMPUTERS

This section describes program decomposition techniques based on data domains, control structures, functionality, and object-oriented concepts. In all cases, we aim at performance tuning and enhancement of message-passing programming. At the end, we characterize the environment for heterogeneous programming.

### 11.5.1 Domain Decomposition Techniques

Programming a multicomputer requires three major steps: *decomposition*, *mapping*, and *tuning*. The goals are to balance the load, minimize communication overhead, reduce sequential bottlenecks, and make the program scalable. Decomposition of the  $\pi$  calculation is a perfect example of domain decomposition.

In general, if a calculation is based on a large, static data structure and the amount of work is about the same for each data element, then one should partition the data structure evenly.

The resulting programming technique is called *domain decomposition*. This technique can be used with a wide range of applications, including physical modeling, matrix computations, and database/knowledge base management.

**Perfect Decomposition** To choose the best decomposition method for a given application, one needs to understand the mathematical formulation, the data domain, the algorithm used, and the flow of control (communication pattern). Certain applications fall naturally into the *perfect decomposition* category. Such parallel applications can be divided evenly into a set of processes that require little or no communication with each other.

This category is the easiest to decompose. The  $\pi$  computation is a good example of a perfect decomposition in which only the partial sums need to be communicated. The order in which these summations are performed is immaterial, and thus interprocess synchronization is unnecessary.

Perfect decomposition often leads to SPMD operational mode. In other words, the same node program is replicated at all the nodes. Real applications of this kind range from the modeling of proteins with thousands of atoms and millions of possible configurations to financial speculation involving investments subject to parallel evaluation of multiple hypothetical portfolio cases simultaneously.

Perfect decomposition requires very little communication overhead, and the balanced computations often result in nearly 100% efficiency. This kind of decomposition requires the least amount of programmer effort.

Often the same sequential program running on a single processor will be running on all node processors, each with a different data set. Once an interprocess dependence relationship exists, the conditions for perfect decomposition may be compromised.

**Domain Decomposition** The key to domain decomposition is the *regularity* of the data structures involved. Three kinds of problem domains are identified below as natural candidates for domain decomposition:

- (1) *Static data structure*—For example, matrix factorization for solving a large finite-difference problem on a system with a regular network topology.
- (2) *Dynamic data structures tied to a single entity*—For example, in a many-body problem, subsets of the bodies can be distributed to different nodes. Through gravitational forces, the bodies may be interacting with each other and moving in space. The calculation for each body can stay on the original node assigned.
- (3) *Fixed domain with dynamic computations within various regions of the domain*—For example, a program that models fluid vortices, where the domain stays fixed but the whirlpools move around.

Three major steps are specified below to decompose the domain of a given application:

- (1) Distribute the subdomain of data to various nodes.
- (2) Restrict the computation so that each node program updates its own subdomain of data.
- (3) Put the communication in node programs.

The way to implement the above steps is first to port the sequential program to various nodes. The porting procedure involves the following operations: Compile and test the existing sequential program on one node and then run multiple copies of the same program on many nodes at once, after putting in the communication commands required. Localize the node program execution over its own data. Finally, tune the program to enhance the performance.



### Example 11.8 LINPACK matrix factorization using domain decomposition (Justin Rattner, Intel Scientific Computers, 1990)

Gaussian elimination is often performed in factoring a square matrix in the LINPACK linear equations package. The regular nature of this algorithm and the regularity of the domain make it inherently parallel and suitable for domain decomposition.

Distributing the domain only requires partitioning the characteristic matrix into sections and distributing them among the processor nodes. We will first examine the sequential LINPACK Gaussian elimination

algorithm. After determining the matrix distribution, we then distribute the computation, resulting in a parallel matrix factorization algorithm.

The LU factorization is a triply nested loop: The outer loop controls how much of the matrix remains to be factorized. At each iteration, the remaining part of the matrix is a smaller submatrix in the lower right-hand corner. The elimination process requires that information from one node be broadcast to all the other nodes. A sequential factor algorithm in LINPACK is as follows:

#### Sequential Factor Algorithm

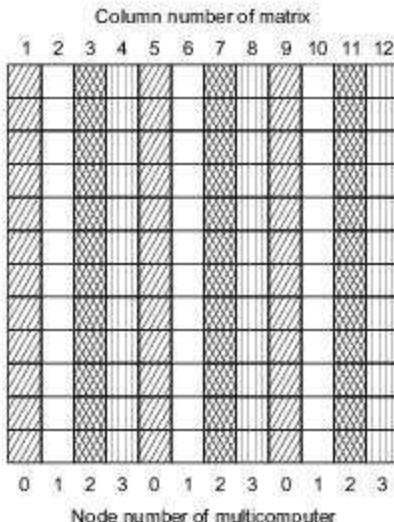
```

for  $i = 1$  to  $n - 1$  do
    Find max[ $A(i, i)$  to  $A(n, i)$ ] in  $i$ th column,
    Swap rows to make  $A(i, i)$  the pivot,
    Divide  $A(i + 1, i)$  to  $A(n, i)$  by  $A(i, i)$ ,
    for  $i = i + 1$  to  $n$  do
        for  $k = i + 1$  to  $n$  do
             $A(k, j) \leftarrow A(k, j) - A(k, i) \times A(i, j)$ 
        end of  $k$ -loop
    end of  $j$ -loop
end of  $i$ -loop

```

This sequential code can be executed directly on a single node. The next step is to distribute the matrix elements. The matrix is distributed by columns among the processor nodes. The matrix domain is mapped to the nodes so that all the processors own approximately the same number of columns of the matrix.

Figure 11.7 shows a column-wrapped mapping of a  $12 \times 12$  matrix onto four processors. Once a column becomes the pivot column, it requires no further computation. By using this column mapping, all processors can be kept busy during most of the computation, and a new processor owns the pivot column at each step.



**Fig. 11.7** Column-wrapped mapping of a  $12 \times 12$  matrix onto four nodes of a multicomputer (Courtesy of Justin Rattner, Intel Scientific Computers, 1990)

The *parallel factor algorithm* is designed to make the pivoting processor control the computation at each outer-loop iteration. The processor owning the first column finds the pivot element, swaps the pivot row with the first row, and divides the pivot column by the pivot, just as in the sequential factor algorithm.

After the first iteration, the pivot processor broadcasts the pivot column and the pivot row number as a message to all the remaining processors. Any processor receiving this message swaps its pivot row with its first row. Then all processors perform the remaining subtraction and scaling from each remaining column simultaneously.

This parallel factorization algorithm is specified below, where  $n$  is the order of the matrix,  $N$  is the total number of nodes,  $i$  is the global index,  $h$  is a local index with an initial value of 1, and  $p$  is the index of the processor. The value of  $p$  is different for each processor and is in the range  $0 \leq p < N$ . In addition, all processors use the same node program as stated below.

#### Parallel Factor Algorithm

$p \leftarrow$  index of this processor

for  $i = 1$  to  $n - 1$  do

    if  $(i - 1) \bmod N = p$  then

        Find max in the  $h$ th column

        Swap row  $i$  and  $h$  to make  $A(i, i)$  the pivot

        Divide  $A(i + 1, i)$  to  $A(n, i)$  by  $A(i, i)$

        Broadcast pivot column,  $A(i + 1, i)$  to  $A(n, i)$ ,  
            and pivot row number  $h$

$h \leftarrow h + 1$

    else

        Receive the pivot package

        Swap rows

        Scale and subtract the pivot column from each remaining column

end of  $i$ -loop

The above parallel algorithm is modified from the serial algorithm by the addition of a *test* to determine the pivot processor and system calls to *send* (broadcast) the pivot information to all the processor nodes. This simple change may result in a maximum speedup proportional to the number  $N$  of processors used in the multicomputer.

**Performance Tuning** From a successive pivoting point of view, the above algorithm is essentially sequential. While a pivot column is being determined, all the remaining processors are waiting for it. When the pivot is finally broadcast, all the processors can subtract in parallel and then proceed with the next pivot node, etc.

From a performance point of view, the load is not fully balanced across the nodes. The sequential bottleneck is in the successive pivoting processors. The mapping of the matrix columns in a modulo fashion has already provided a better load balance than assigning adjacent columns to the same processor.

The performance can be further tuned by reordering the algorithm to speed up the pivot and broadcast process, or by dividing the row in parallel instead of the column. Furthermore, one can change the granularity

by using a *block algorithm* to obtain fewer and longer messages, which will improve the communication/computation ratio.

In other applications, such as seismic processing, finite-element analysis, vision integration, and multidimensional complex FFT, the performance bottleneck is in different areas such as extensive synchronization delays or dynamically changing data structures. In each case, performance tuning will be focused differently.

### 11.5.2 Control Decomposition Techniques

When the domain and data structure are irregular or unpredictable, we cannot apply domain decomposition. One alternative is to focus on distributing the flow of control of the computation rather than on distributing the domain.

An example of a domain that is not suitable for domain decomposition is the irregular search space created by a game tree where the branching factor varies from node to node. The search tree must be dynamically assigned to maintain a balanced load.

In general, *control decomposition* is used for symbolic processing problems such as those in artificial intelligence applications. In this section, we will study several control decomposition strategies, including *functional decomposition* and a *manager-worker approach*.

**Functional Decomposition** An algorithm can be visualized as a set of interconnected functional modules. The flow of control is indicated by directed edges in the diagram. For small problems, these functional modules tend to be executed sequentially, one after another. However, large problems may have significant parallelism between the modules.



### Example 11.9 Image understanding with functional decomposition

Figure 11.8 shows an example of functional decomposition for image understanding.

Image enhancement, edge detection, pattern recognition, and scene and motion analysis are processed by four functional modules in a pipelined fashion (with a feedback branch, if adaptively done) over a sequence of image frames.

The functionality requires the application of different decomposition techniques, depending on the data structures and computations involved. One needs to add special message interfaces between different functional modules.

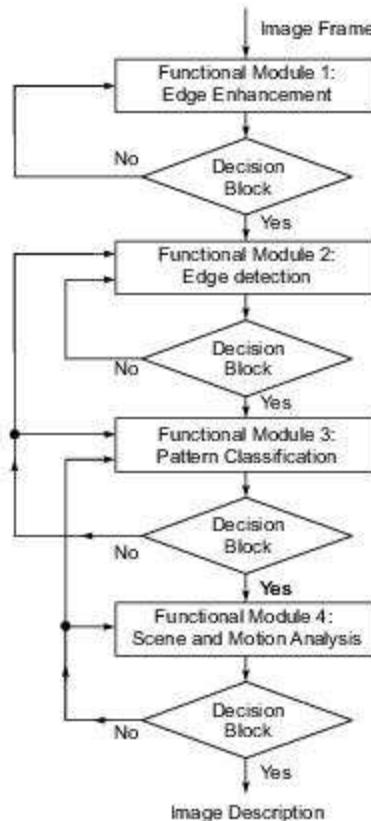
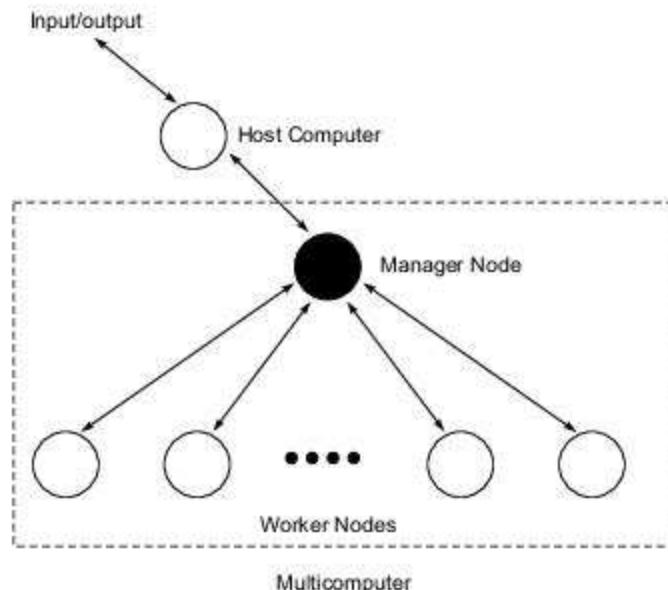


Fig. 11.8 Functional decomposition for image understanding

Usually different functional modules are assigned to different processor nodes. Some nodes will be floating-point-intensive, some for symbolic manipulation, some for input/output activities, etc.

**Manager-Worker Approach** This is a divide-and-conquer technique. The idea is to divide the application into tasks, not necessarily having the same size, and use one of the processes to serve as a manager node and the rest as worker nodes.

As illustrated in Fig. 11.9, the manager is responsible for dispatching tasks out as worker nodes become available. The manager must also communicate with the user or the host node for input/output operations.



**Fig. 11.9** Manager-worker mapping for control decomposition (Courtesy of Justin Rattner, Intel Scientific Computers, 1990)

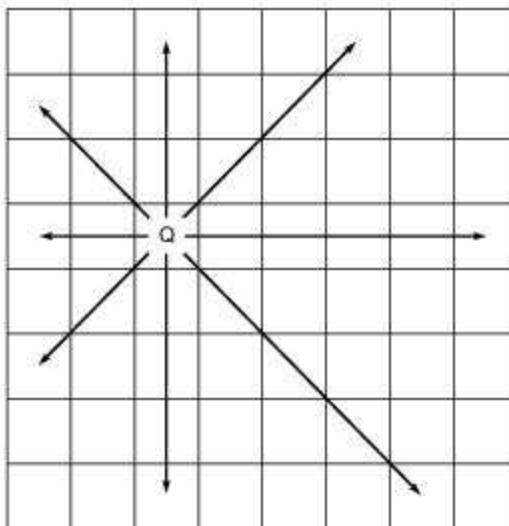
The manager functions include management of global data structures, maintaining a list of subprograms (tasks), and assigning problems/tasks to workers. The worker node, once it becomes available, should request the job, receive the job, and perform the assigned task. The manager must perform dynamic load balancing among the workers in order to enhance the performance of the entire system.



### Example 11.10 Solving the N-queens problem on a multicompiler

A typical application of the manager-worker decomposition is to solve the  $N$ -queens problem on a multicompiler. The problem is to find all possible solutions for placing  $N$  queens on an  $N \times N$  chessboard so that no more than one queen is on each row, each column, or each diagonal.

In other words, each row, column, or diagonal must have exactly one queen and no queen can attack another, as illustrated in Fig. 11.10. The way the  $N$ -queen problem is solved is to generate a search tree using the workers to solve each leaf node of the search tree.



Problem: Find all solutions for placing  $N$  queens on an  $N \times N$  chessboard so that there is exactly one queen on each row, each column, and each diagonal.

**Fig. 11.10**  $N$ -queens problem: An example of manager-worker decomposition (Courtesy of Justin' Rattner, Intel Scientific Computers, 1990)

The manager builds and maintains the top level of the search tree, assigns workers to build different branches of the tree, and keeps track of the total number of solutions (chessboard patterns) generated. Each worker should be able to split the problem into subproblems and to solve a subproblem.

Once a branch is too heavily extended, the worker can report to the manager which will off-load subtree operations to other available nodes. Close communication between the manager and the workers is necessary to keep up a well-balanced processing of the search tree on a dynamic basis.

**Performance Tuning** One technique for tuning the performance is to use double-buffer messages in a manager-worker decomposition. The idea is to send a worker two pieces of work the first time. As soon as the worker is finished working on the first piece, another piece is readily available.

Once the communication/computation issues have been well balanced, the results from the first piece of work are returned to the manager who can send over another piece of work before the worker finishes the second piece. There is always one job waiting in the worker's queue, and thus workers are kept busy all the time.

A potential problem with the manager-worker approach is that the manager may become the bottleneck. According to Intel iPSC experience, up to 50 workers managed by a single manager did not create a serious bottleneck problem as long as a good communication/computation ratio was maintained.

Clearly, for a multicomputer consisting of thousands of processors, the manager bottleneck problem can become more serious. One can then consider providing a hierarchy of managers.

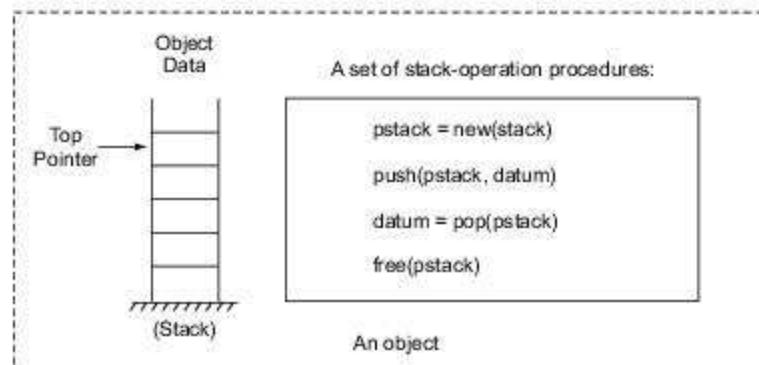
Another possible solution is to use floating managers or multitasking processors, which can execute both a worker process or a manager process on the same processor. These options must be carefully analyzed and experimented with before they can be adopted in real applications.

### 11.5.3 Heterogeneous Processing

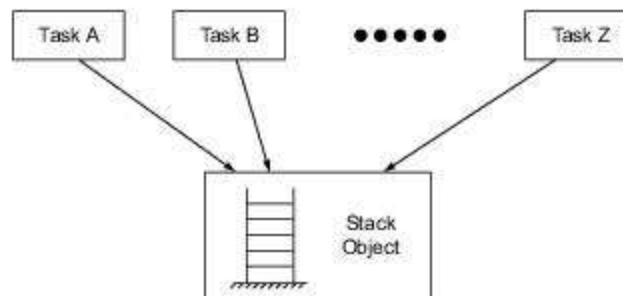
In this section, we learn how to combine object-oriented programming with message-passing techniques for distributed computing applications. We first characterize objects in relation to parallelism. Then we illustrate the *object decomposition* concept using an air traffic control simulation example.

Finally, we present the concept of *layered parallelism* using a seismic monitoring example which involves all the decomposition techniques we have learned. Such concepts may be needed to solve very large-scale problems.

**Objects and Parallelism** The object-oriented approach to parallel programming offers a formal basis for decomposing the data structures and threads of control in user programs. In what follows, we define objects and reveal the relationship between objects and parallel processing.



(a) Defining a stack as an object



(b) Shared access to a stack object by multiple tasks

Fig. 11.11 A stack object and its shared access by multiple tasks

The idea of objects comes from *data abstraction*, in order to hide low-level details from programmers. An object encompasses a set of logically related data and a set of procedures which operate on the object's data, as illustrated by the example in Fig. 11.11a.

The example shows that temporary storage in the form of a stack can be treated as an object consisting of a last-in-first-out queue of data which can be pushed down or popped up in its management. It should be noted that an object type (class) is conceptually different from instances of the object type.

Those instances, called objects, are the ones used in program execution. Only the object's procedures have access to the object's data. A programmer can be freed from knowing the detailed implementation of the objects.

This simplifies program debugging and testing efforts, and offers modularity in program development, which are all desired features for parallel programming.

Shared data structures can be organized as objects. Shared access to a stack object by multiple tasks is shown in Fig. 11.11b. A parallel program may be composed of multiple threads of execution that access both private and shared data.

Threads of execution can be allocated as instances of a task type. If tasks must communicate by exchanging messages, the shared object is accessed via message passing, which must be synchronized by a system-defined class of queue objects.

**Object Decomposition** This technique offers natural advantages for parallel computers. It avoids the use of global variables, simplifies the program/data partitioning process, and provides higher granularity of interaction among objects through the use of predefined procedures for accessing objects.

Ada and C++ both support data abstraction in object-oriented programming on message-passing systems. The following air traffic simulation system explains the key concepts behind object decomposition for parallel programming. The goal of the simulation is to measure the effects of scheduling, weather, etc., on air traffic flow control.



### Example 11.11 Air traffic simulation on a multicomputer

Three fundamental object types are identified in Fig. 11.12. First, the airports contain information regarding their location, runways, etc. Second, airplanes contain information related to position, velocity, fuel capacity, etc. Third, air space sectors are pre-specified by the American Flight Agency.

Objects of these types are manipulated by four task types: The air dispatchers allocate airplanes and pilots (scheduling). The pilots operate the airplanes. The air traffic controllers manage the safe use of airports and airspace sectors to avoid collisions.

The tasks interact by invoking procedures on shared airplane, airport, and airspace objects. The communication among the tasks and between tasks and objects can be simulated by a message-passing multicomputer. Appropriate protocols must be established in these message-passing operations.

The use of multiple tasks with separate functions in this application is also an example of control decomposition. The computational complexity of this air traffic simulation problem is controlled by partitioning the airspace into sectors.

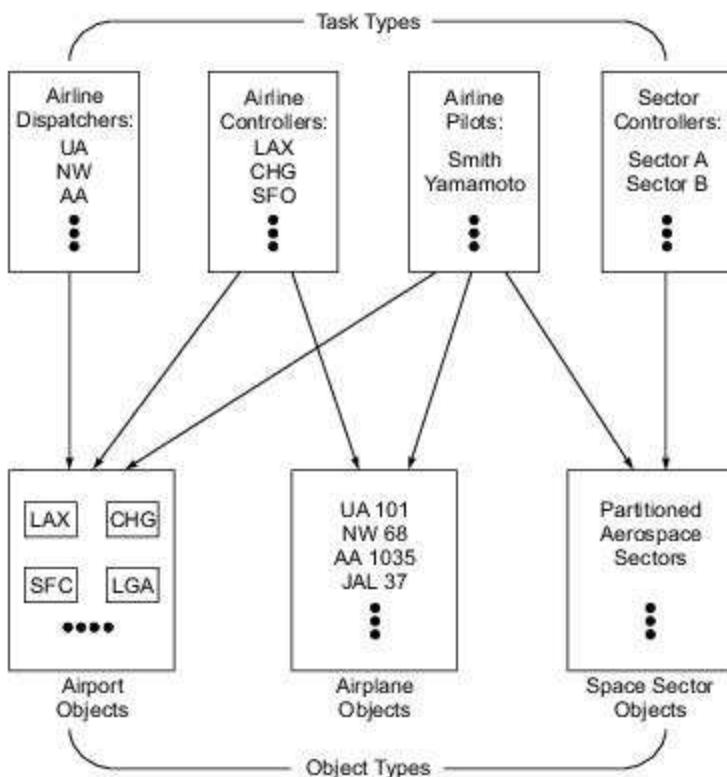


Fig. 11.12 Air traffic simulation using decomposition techniques

The air traffic controller manages the separation of airplanes within each sector. When an airplane crosses between two sectors, the controller must pass the duty to the next sector controller on the route of the flight.

Sector partitioning of the airspace is indeed a domain decomposition of the problem. Different sector controllers are simulated at different nodes of a multicomputer. In order to conduct real-time simulations, all the object information must be retrieved from the local memory without page faults from the backup store.

For example, distribution of the airports should be made to associate the airports and their controllers within the same sector node. As airplanes fly from one airport to another, the objects are sent as messages among nodes. Load balance can be achieved by defining the sector boundaries, interleaving sector objects, or allowing sector migration dynamically as traffic becomes dense.

---

**Heterogeneous Processing** A growing trend in computing is to use a network of resources for *heterogeneous processing* (HP). A large-scale complex problem can be solved by combining a number of computers of various kinds in a network environment.

On a multicomputer-based network, HP can be practiced using a combination of decomposition techniques. In what follows, we describe computations with embedded parallelism at various processing layers.

**Layered Decomposition** In solving large and complex problems, we may have to employ a programmatic layered approach to extracting parallelism using different decomposition techniques at different levels. Such an approach can be called *layered decomposition*.

The functional approach to image understanding (Fig. 11.8) can be considered a four-layered decomposition. As machine size reaches thousands of nodes, we have to develop programming techniques on that scale.

The layered approach certainly addresses the scalability problem with foresight. Example applications include weather simulation, fluid flow, structural analysis, molecular dynamics, and seismic monitoring.



### Example 11.12 Heterogeneous processing based on layered parallelism

The problem of seismic monitoring requires the processing of a large amount of seismic data using a layered approach consisting of three levels, as illustrated in Fig. 11.13.

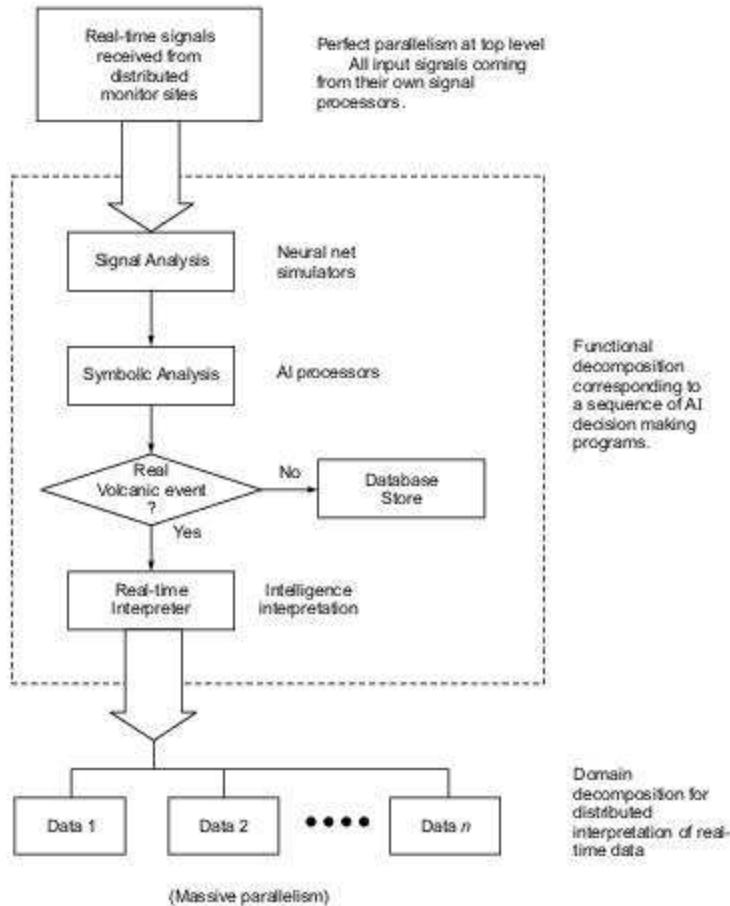


Fig. 11.13 Layered parallelism in decomposing the seismic monitoring problem for heterogeneous processing  
<https://hemanthrajhemu.github.io>

At the highest level, perfect parallelism is expected because real-time signals come in from monitors located at various sites using separate processors mostly running with Fortran seismic code.

Once the seismic signals are cleaned up by the distributed processors, we need to use a middle level of functional decomposition corresponding to a sequence of AI decisions.

Finally, the interpretation of real-time data may require domain decomposition for each signal domain.

Different types of computers are used at different levels in the layered approach. The monitor processors used at the top level are nothing but separated signal processors with numeric, Fortran, and vector processing capabilities.

The functional decomposition may use neural simulators, Lisp processors, or other symbolic machines with extended memory and intelligence interpretation capabilities.

The bottom level of domain decomposition demands a higher degree of parallelism if the survey sites are numerous. Graphics/visualization capabilities are needed to interpret the final results. The above example presents a typical case of heterogeneous processing in a network environment.



## Summary

In this chapter, we studied software environments and program development techniques for parallel computers. Parallel programming languages must address important issues such as compatibility, expressiveness, ease of use, efficiency, and portability; and usually there are trade-offs involved while addressing these issues. Parallel programming environments must provide the required tools for program design, debugging, visualization, performance monitoring and tuning, input/output, and communication. As specific examples, we studied the Cray Y-MP, Paragon and CM-5 parallel programming environments.

The closely related issues of synchronization and multiprocessing modes are central to any parallel processing environment. We studied the basic principles of synchronization in terms of atomic operations, wait protocols, fairness policies, and sole-access protocols. Multiprocessing requires fast context-switching and efficient synchronization. Multitasking may be seen as one variant of multiprocessing; depending on its granularity, it may be dubbed macro-tasking or micro-tasking. The multitasking mechanism provided on Cray multiprocessors was studied as a specific example.

One important model of parallel programs is the shared variable model. Since multiple parallel processes access shared variables in memory, locks can be employed for achieving protected access. A lock may be implemented as a spin lock or a suspend lock. Semaphores provide a higher level of synchronization mechanism than locks. The two basic operations on a semaphore  $s$  are  $P(s)$  and  $V(s)$ . Monitors provide a still higher level of synchronization, encapsulating both shared variables and the permitted operations on them. We studied these synchronization mechanisms with the help of example applications.

Another equally important model of parallel programs is the message-passing model, in which the various processes running in parallel—on multiple processors—do not in general share main memory. Program development for multicomputers under this model must also address the issue of distributing the computation over available nodes, since this distribution determines the demands made on the message-passing subsystem, and thereby the overall system performance. In this context, the advantages

and disadvantages of synchronous versus asynchronous message passing were discussed, although it is true that the asynchronous model is more widely used.

Decomposition techniques are needed for mapping programs onto multicomputers. Domain decomposition and control decomposition techniques were described in this chapter, with several specific examples. The concept of heterogeneous processing was introduced.



## Exercises

---

**Problem 11.1** Explain the following terms associated with fast and efficient synchronization schemes on a shared-memory multiprocessor:

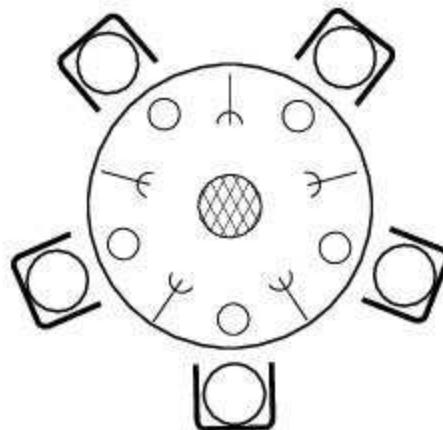
- Busy-wait versus sleep-wait protocols for sole access of a critical section.
- Fairness policies for reviving one of the suspended processes waiting in a queue.
- Lock mechanisms for pre-synchronization to achieve sole access to a critical section.
- Optimistic concurrency or the post-synchronization method.
- Server synchronization and the corresponding synchronization environment.

**Problem 11.2** Distinguish between spin locks and suspend locks for sole access to a critical section. Generalize Dekker's protocol from two procedures to three or more procedures sharing critical sections. Also implement the generalized Dekker's protocol using the Test&Set atomic operation.

**Problem 11.3** There are many ways to solve the mutual exclusion problem based on different implementation schemes, such as the use of spin locks or Dekker's protocol. Describe the following schemes:

- Implementing mutually exclusive access to a critical section using binary semaphores.
- Implementing mutual exclusion using a monitor called by processes competing for access to a critical section.

**Problem 11.4** Dijkstra [Dijkstra68] has defined the well-known dining philosophers problem: There are five philosophers dining around a table as shown.



Each of the philosophers engages in only two activities, thinking or eating, as characterized below as process  $P_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, 5$ .

```

 $P_i$ : begin
    loop
        Think
        Fetch protocol
        Eat
        Release protocol
    endloop
end

```

A bowl with an endless supply of spaghetti is placed in the center of the table. Each philosopher is given a plate. There are five forks on the table, one between adjacent philosophers. Each philosopher enters a thinking period while not eating. In order to be able to eat, the philosopher must get hold of two neighboring forks from his left and right sides. The fetch protocol specifies how each of the forks will be picked up. The release protocol specifies how the forks will be released after eating. Each philosopher is allowed to pick up one fork at a time from his left or from his right side. Each fork can be used by only one philosopher at a time. No fork can be passed around the table, and a fork must be put back where it was picked up.

The problem is to design the fetch protocol and the release protocol for the philosophers so that no deadlock will occur. A deadlock means a circular wait situation in which each philosopher holds one fork and refuses to release it. A deadlock means starvation, so we should avoid it in the solution.

- Use the P and V operators and binary semaphores to specify the fetch and release protocols. One semaphore can be used to represent the fork on the right, and another semaphore to represent the fork on the left. The purpose of the protocols is to prevent deadlock from occurring so that no individual starvation will occur. Initially, all the forks are placed on the table corresponding to an initial value of 1 for the semaphores. When a fork is picked up, its semaphore is changed to a value of 0.
- Design a monitor to control the fetch and release of the forks. In this case, the fetch and release are each specified by a procedure in the monitor. Also, specify the philosophers as user processes calling the monitor to claim forks. Again, no deadlock or starvation is allowed under the same assumption made in part (a).

**Problem 11.5** Explain why mutual exclusion, non-preemption, wait for, and circular wait are necessary conditions but not sufficient conditions for a system deadlock to occur. Also distinguish among the deadlock prevention, avoidance, detection, and recovery schemes. Comment on their implementation costs and expected performances.

**Problem 11.6** Five concurrent processes are specified below using four resource types represented by four semaphores. Answer the following questions with reasoning and justification.

**Begin**

**shared record**

**begin**

**var**  $S_1, S_2, S_3, S_4$ : **semaphore**;

**var** blocked, unblocked: **integer**;

**end**

**initial** blocked = 0, unblocked = 1;

**initial**  $S_1 = S_2 = S_3 = \text{unblocked}$ ;  $S_4 = \text{blocked}$ ;

**cobegin**

**A:** **begin**  $P(S_1); V(S_1); P(S_2); V(S_2)$ ; **end**;

**B:** **begin**  $P(S_1); P(S_2); V(S_4); V(S_2); V(S_1)$ ; **end**;

**C:** **begin**  $P(S_2); P(S_3); V(S_2); V(S_3)$ ; **end**;

**D:** **begin**  $P(S_4); P(S_2); P(S_1); V(S_1); V(S_2)$ ; **end**;

**E:** **begin**  $P(S_3); P(S_2); V(S_2); V(S_3)$ ; **end**;

**coend**

**End**

- Is a deadlock possible among the five code segments represented by A, B, C, D, and E? Which subset of code segments may enter a deadlock on what resources?
- If the deadlock situation does occur in part (a), what additional code segments could be indefinitely blocked?
- Is a deadlock inevitable or does it depend on race conditions? Justify your answer with reasoning using a resource allocation graph.
- Make a minor change in one program segment

to prevent a deadlock from occurring. Justify the claim with a resource allocation graph similar to Fig. 11.5.

**Problem 11.7** Scheduling access to a moving-head disk can be implemented by a monitor. The implementation consists of three components: user processes which request, access, and release the disk service; a disk scheduler which performs the scheduling of disk data to be accessed by one user at a time; and driver procedures that perform actual data transfer.

- Write a monitor to implement the disk scheduler. The monitor should consist of two procedures, one for a request for and one for a release from disk access.
- Specify how a user process can call the monitor for disk access. The disk driver procedures are considered given.

**Problem 11.8** Write a monitor as a barrier counter for the synchronization of  $n$  concurrent processes. The barrier counter should be resettable, and a user process should be specified to call the monitor when it reaches the barrier. Note that local and shared variables must be declared and initialization of local data must be given.

**Problem 11.9** Answer the following questions on decomposition techniques for message-passing programming on multicomputer nodes:

- What is a perfect decomposition? Explain the advantages and discuss the differences in program replication techniques on multicomputers as opposed to program partitioning on multiprocessors.
- Based on data domain, algorithm used, and flow of control in applications, distinguish the opportunities for applying domain, control, and object decomposition techniques in distributed computing on multicomputers.

**Problem 11.10** The  $N$ -queens problem (Fig. 11.10) was introduced along with the manager-worker approach to control decomposition in programming

a multicomputer. Suppose  $N = 8$ . There are 92 possible solutions to the 8-queens problem.

- Write a program that searches for a solution. First run the program on a sequential computer (such as on a workstation or even a personal computer). Record the time required to conduct the sequential search. A sequential search involves backtracking once an impossible configuration is exposed. The backtracking step systematically removes the current emplacements of the queens and then continues with a new emplacement.
- Develop a parallel program to run on a message-passing multicomputer if one is available. For a concurrent search for solutions to the  $N$ -queens problem, backtracking is not necessary because all solutions are equally pursued. A detected impossible configuration is simply discarded by the node. Observe the dynamics of the concurrent search activities and record the total execution time. Compare the measured execution time data and comment on speedup gain and other performance issues.

**Problem 11.11** The traveling salesperson problem is to find the shortest route connecting a set of cities, visiting each city only once. The difficulty is that as the number of cities grows, the number of possible paths connecting them grows exponentially. In fact,  $(n - 1)!/2$  paths are possible for  $n$  cities. A parallel program, based on simulated annealing, was developed by Caltech researchers Felten, Karlin, and Otto [Felten85] for solving the problem for 64 cities grouped in 4 clusters of 16 each on a multicomputer.

- Kallstrom and Thakkar (1988) implemented the Caltech program in C language on an iPSC/1 hypercube computer with 32 nodes. Study this C program for solving the traveling salesperson problem using a simulated annealing technique. Describe the concurrency opportunities in performing the large number of iterations (such as 60,000) per temperature drop.

- (b) Rerun the code on a modern message-passing multicomputer. Check the execution time and performance results and compare them with those reported by Kallstrom and Thakkar. You will need to modify the code in order to run on a different machine.

**Problem 11.12** Choose an example program to demonstrate the concepts of macrotasking, microtasking, and autotasking on a Cray-like multiprocessor supercomputer. Perform a tradeoff study on the relative performance of the three multitasking schemes based on the example program execution. Make reasonable assumptions as needed, as in Example 11.1.

**Problem 11.13** Write a multitasked vectorized code in Fortran 90 for matrix multiplication using four processors with a shared memory. Assume square matrices of order  $n = 4k$ . The entire data set is available from the shared memory.

**Problem 11.14** Design a message-passing program for performing fast Fourier transform (FFT) over 1024 sample points on a 32-node hypercube computer. Both host and node programs should be specified, including all communication commands. Initially each node holds 32 sample points without duplicating the data set. The results should be sent to the host for output.

**Problem 11.15** A typical two-dimensional image is represented by a rectangular array of pixels (picture elements). Each pixel  $(i, j)$  is represented by a  $\log_2 b$  bit integer corresponding to the gray level (between 0 and  $b - 1$ ) at coordinate  $(i, j)$  of a black

-and-white picture. Histogramming is a process to count the frequency of occurrences of each gray level. Let  $\text{histog}(0 : b - 1)$  be the array of a histogram of  $b$  gray levels.

The following serial code is written for histogramming on a uniprocessor system:

```
Var pixel(0:m - 1, 0:n - 1);
Var histog(0 : b - 1): integer;
histog(0:b - 1) = 0;
for i = 0 to m - 1 do
    for j = 0 to n - 1 do
        histog(pixel(i,j)) = histog(pixel(i,j)) + 1
```

The time complexity (number of counts) of this serial program is  $O(mn)$ , where  $mn$  corresponds to the image size.

Partition the image,  $\text{pixel}(i, j)$  for  $0 \leq i \leq m - 1$  and  $0 \leq j \leq n - 1$  into  $p$  disjoint segments, where each segment has  $m/p = s$  rows of the image. Develop a parallel program which can spawn a set of  $p$  processes to histogram the entire image. The  $p$  concurrent processes share the same histogram array  $\text{histog}(0 : b - 1)$ .

- Use the **Doall** and **Endall** statements to specify a parallel program for counting the histogram simultaneously on a  $p$ -processor system with shared memory.
- What is the potential speedup of the parallel program over the above serial program? You can ignore the image I/O overhead by assuming the entire image database is in the main memory.

**<https://hemanthrajhemu.github.io>**

# Part V

## Instruction and System Level Parallelism

---

### Chapter 12

#### Instruction Level Parallelism

### Chapter 13

#### Trends in Parallel Systems



### Summary

The basic concepts of parallel computer systems—*theoretical formulations, hardware architecture, and programming models*—have been discussed in detail in Parts I through IV of the book. The decades of 1970s and 1980s generated a great many innovative ideas in computer architecture. Since then, over the last couple of decades, the technologies underlying computer architecture—VLSI, storage, interconnects, and so on—have seen huge advances, and these have had a huge impact on computer architecture. At the same time, the range of applications of computer systems has also grown enormously.

Against this background, Chapter 12 discusses the important topic of *instruction level parallelism* (ILP), which has a crucial bearing on processor design. We see that the issue of exploitation of ILP is a system design issue, and we also discuss the limitations which are encountered in exploiting ILP in real-life applications.

Chapter 13 discusses recent trends in parallel computer systems—for this, however, it is also necessary to discuss in brief the technological advances which have impacted computer architecture. Some basic concepts related to parallel algorithms are discussed, and a number of case studies are presented of processors, systems-on-a-chip, and massively parallel systems. The parallel programming language Chapel is introduced, as also function libraries which have been developed for writing parallel programs.

**<https://hemanthrajhemu.github.io>**

## 12

# Instruction Level Parallelism

12.1

## INTRODUCTION

The period between the 1970s and the 1990s saw a great many innovative ideas being proposed in computer architecture. The basic hardware technology of computers had been mastered by the 1960s, and several companies had produced successful commercial products. The time was therefore right to generate new ideas, to reach performance levels higher than that of the original single-processor systems. As we have seen, parallelism in its various forms has played a central role in the development of newer architectures.

The earlier part of this book has presented a comprehensive overview of the many architectural innovations which had been attempted until the early 1990s. Some of these were commercially successful, while many others were not so fortunate—which is not at all surprising, given the large variety of ideas which were proposed and the fast-paced advances taking place in the underlying technologies.

In the last two chapters of the book, we take a look at some of the recent trends and developments in computer architecture—including, as appropriate, a brief discussion of advances in the underlying technologies which have made these developments possible. In fact, we shall see that the recent advances in computer architecture can be understood only when we also take a look at the underlying technologies.

### What is computer architecture?

- (a) We define *computer architecture* as the arrangement by which the various system building blocks—processors, functional units, main memory, cache, data paths, and so on—are interconnected and inter-operated to achieve desired *system performance*.
- (b) Processors make up the most important part of a computer system. Therefore, in addition to (a), *processor design* also constitutes a central and very important element of computer architecture. Various functional elements of a processor must be designed, interconnected and inter-operated to achieve desired *processor performance*.

*System performance* is the key benchmark in the study of computer architecture. A computer system must solve the real world problem, or support the real world application, for which the user is installing it. Therefore, in addition to the theoretical peak performance of the processor, the design objectives of any computer architecture must also include other important criteria, which include system performance under

realistic load conditions, scalability, price, usability, and reliability. In addition, power consumption and physical size are also often important criteria.

A basic rule of system design is that *there should be no performance bottlenecks in the system*. Typically, a performance bottleneck arises when one part of the system—i.e. one of its subsystems—cannot keep up with the overall throughput requirements of the system. Such a performance bottleneck can occur in a production system, a distribution system, or even in traffic system<sup>[1]</sup>. If a performance bottleneck does occur in a system—i.e. if one subsystem is not able to keep up with other subsystems—then the other subsystems remain idle, waiting for response from the slower one.

In a computer system, the key subsystems are processors, memories, I/O interfaces, and the data paths connecting them. Within the processors, we have subsystems such as functional units, registers, cache memories, and internal data buses. Within the computer system as a whole—or within a single processor—designers do not wish to create bottlenecks to system performance.



### Example 12.1 Performance bottleneck in a system

In Fig. 12.1 we see the schematic diagram of a simple computer system consisting of four processors, a large shared main memory, and a processor-memory bus.

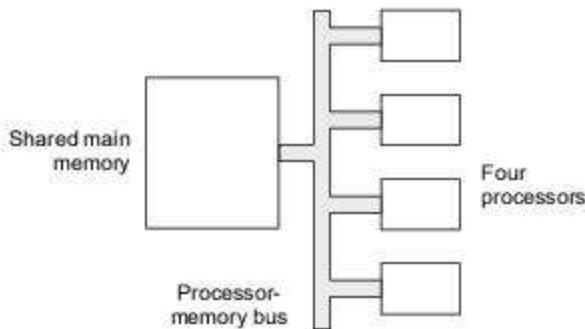


Fig. 12.1 A simple shared memory multiprocessor system

For the three subsystems, we assume the following performance figures:

- Each of the four processors can perform double precision floating point operations at the rate of 500 million per second, i.e. 500 MFLOPs.
- The shared main memory can read/write data at the aggregate rate of 1000 million 32-bit words per second.
- The processor-memory bus has the capability of transferring 500 million 32-bit words per second to/from main memory.

<sup>[1]</sup> In common language, we say that *a chain is only as strong as its weakest link*.

This system exhibits a performance mismatch between the processors, main memory, and the processor-memory bus. The data transfer rates supported by the main memory and the shared processor-memory bus do not meet the aggregate requirements of the four processors in the system.

The system architect must pay careful attention to all such potential mismatches in system design. Otherwise, the sustained performance which the system can deliver can only equal the performance of the slowest part of the system—i.e. the bottleneck.

While this is a simple example, it illustrates the key challenge facing system designers. It is clear that, in the above system, if *processor performance* is improved by, say, 20%, we may not see a matching improvement in *system performance*, because the performance bottleneck in the system is the relatively slower processor-memory bus. In this particular case, a better investment for increased system performance could be (a) a faster processor-memory bus, and (b) improved cache memory with each processor, i.e. one with better hit rate—which reduces contention for the processor-memory bus.

In fact, as we shall see, even achieving peak theoretical performance is not the final goal of system design. The system performance must be maintained for real-life applications, and that too in spite of the enormous diversity in modern applications.

In earlier chapters of the book, we have studied the many ways in which parallelism can be introduced in a computer system, for higher processing performance. The concept of instruction level parallelism and superscalar architecture has been introduced in Chapter 6. In this chapter, we take a more detailed look at instruction level parallelism.

## 12.2

## BASIC DESIGN ISSUES

As we have seen in Chapter 6, a linear instruction pipeline is the basic structure which exploits instruction level parallelism in the executing sequence of machine instructions. We have also discussed in brief how further hardware techniques can be employed with a view to achieve *superscalar* processor architecture—i.e. multiple instruction issues in every processor clock cycle. In this chapter, we shall study these and other related concepts in some more detail.

Instruction pipeline and cache memory (or multi-level cache memories) hide the memory access latencies of instruction execution. With multiple functional units within the processor, *superscalar* instruction execution rates—greater than one per processor clock cycle—can be targeted, using multiple issue pipeline architecture. The aim is that the enormous processing power made possible by VLSI technology must be utilized to the full, ideally with each functional unit producing a result in every clock cycle. For this, the processor must also have data paths of requisite bandwidth—within the processor, to the memory and I/O subsystems, and to other processors in a multiprocessor system.

With a single processor chip today containing a billion ( $10^9$ ) or more transistors, system design is not possible in the absence of a target application. For example, is a processor being designed for intensive scientific number-crunching, a commercial server, or for desktop applications?

One key design choice which appears in such contexts is the following.

Should the primary design emphasis be on:

- exploiting fully the parallelism present in a single instruction stream, or

(b) supporting multiple instruction streams on the processor in multi-core and/or multi-threading mode?

This design choice is also related to the depth of the instruction pipeline. In general, designs which aim to maximize the exploitation of instruction level parallelism need deeper pipelines; up to a point, such designs may support higher clock rates. But, beyond a point, deeper pipelines do not necessarily provide higher net throughput, while power consumption rises rapidly with clock rate, as we shall also discuss in Chapter 13.

Let us examine the trade-off involved in this context in a simplified way:

$$\text{total chip area} = \text{number of cores} \times \text{chip area per core}$$

or

$$\text{total transistor count} = \text{number of cores} \times \text{transistor count per core}$$

Here we have assumed for simplicity that cache and interconnect area—and transistor count—can be considered proportionately on a per core basis.

At a given time, VLSI technology limits the left hand side in the above equations, while the designer must select the two factors on the right. Aggressive exploitation of instruction level parallelism, with multiple functional units and more complex control logic, increases the chip area—and transistor count—per processor core. Alternatively, for a different category of target applications, the designer may select simpler cores, and thereby place a larger number of them on a single chip.

Of course system design would involve issues which are more complex than these, but a basic design issue is seen here: For the targeted application and performance, how should the designers divide available chip resources among processors and, within a single processor, among its various functional elements?

Within a processor, a set of instructions are in various stages of execution at a given time—within the pipeline stages, functional units, operation buffers, reservation stations, and so on. Recall that functional units themselves may also be internally pipelined. Therefore machine instructions are not in general executed in the order in which they are stored in memory, and all instructions under execution must be seen as ‘work in progress’.

As we shall see, to maintain the work flow of instructions within the processor, a superscalar processor makes use of *branch prediction*—i.e. the result of a conditional branch instruction is predicted even before the instruction executes—so that instructions from the predicted branch can continue to be processed, without causing pipeline stalls. The strategy works provided fairly good branch prediction accuracy is maintained.

But we shall assume that instructions are *committed* in order. Here *committing* an instruction means that the instruction is no longer ‘under execution’—the processor state and program state reflect the completion of all operations specified in the instruction.

Thus we assume that, at any time, the set of committed instructions correspond with the program order of instructions and the conditional branches actually taken. Any hardware exceptions generated within the processor must reflect the processor and program state resulting from instructions which have already committed.

Parallelism which appears explicitly in the source program, which may be dubbed as *structural parallelism*, is not directly related to instruction level parallelism. Parallelism detected and exploited by the compiler is a form of instruction level parallelism, because the compiler generates the machine instructions which result in parallel execution of multiple operations within the processor. We shall discuss in Section 12.5 some of the main issues related to this method of exploiting instruction level parallelism.

Parallelism detected and exploited by processor hardware *on the fly*, within the instructions which are under execution, is certainly instruction level parallelism. Much of the remaining part of this chapter discusses the basic techniques for hardware detection and exploitation of such parallelism, as well as some related design trade-offs.

While the student is expected to be familiar with the basic concepts related to instruction pipelines, the earlier discussion of these topics in Chapter 6 will serve as an introduction to the techniques discussed more fully in this chapter.

Weak memory consistency models, which are discussed elsewhere in the book, are not discussed explicitly in this chapter, since they are relevant mainly in the case of parallel threads of execution distributed over multiple processors. Similarly—since the discussion in this chapter is primarily in the context of a single processor—the issues of shared memory, cache coherence, and message-routing are also not discussed here. The student may refer to Chapters 5 and 7, respectively, for a discussion of these two topics.

With this background, let us start with a statement of the basic system design objective which is addressed in this chapter.

## 12.3

### PROBLEM DEFINITION

Let us now focus our attention on the execution of machine instructions from a single sequential stream. The instructions are stored in main memory in program order, from where they must be fetched into the processor, decoded, executed, and then committed in program order. In this context, we must address the problem of detecting and exploiting the parallelism which is implicit within the instruction stream.

We need a prototype instruction for our processor. We assume that the processor has a *load-store* type of instruction set, which means that all arithmetic and logical operations are carried out on operands which are present in programmable registers. Operands are transferred between main memory and registers by *load* and *store* instructions only.

We assume a three-address instruction format, as seen on most RISC processors, so that a typical instruction for arithmetic or logical operation has the format:

opcode   operand-1   operand-2   result

Our aim is to make the discussion independent of any specific instruction set, and therefore we shall use simple and self-explanatory opcodes, as needed.

Data transfer instructions have only two operands—source and destination registers; *load* and *store* instructions to/from main memory specify one operand in the form of a memory address, using an available addressing mode. Effective address for *load* and *store* is calculated at the time of instruction execution.

Conditional branch instructions need to be treated as a special category, since each such branch presents two possible continuations of the instruction stream. Branch decision is made only when the instruction executes; at that time, if instructions from the branch-not-taken are in the pipeline, they must be *flushed*. But pipeline flushes are costly in terms of lost processor clock cycles. The payoff of branch prediction lies in the fact that correctly predicted branches allow the detection of parallelism to stretch across two or more basic

blocks of the program, without pipeline stalls. It is for this reason that branch prediction becomes an essential technique in exploiting instruction level parallelism.

Limits to detecting and exploiting instruction level parallelism are imposed by *dependences* between instructions. After all, if  $N$  instructions are completely independent of each other, they can be executed in parallel on  $N$  functional units—if  $N$  functional units are available—and they may even be executed in arbitrary order.

But in fact dependences amongst instructions are a central and essential part of program logic. A dependence specifies that instruction  $I_k$  must wait for instruction  $I_j$  to complete. Within the instruction pipeline, such a dependence may create a *hazard* or *stall*—i.e. lost processor clock cycles while  $I_k$  waits for  $I_j$  to complete.

For this reason, for a given instruction pipeline design and associated functional units, dependences amongst instructions limit the available instruction level parallelism—and therefore it is natural that the central issue in exploiting instruction level parallelism is related to the correct handling of such dependences.

We have already seen in Chapter 2 that dependences amongst instructions fall into several categories; here we shall review these basic concepts and introduce some related notation which will prove useful.

## Data Dependences

Assume that instruction  $I_k$  follows instruction  $I_j$  in the program. *Data dependence* between  $I_j$  and  $I_k$  means that both access a common operand. For the present discussion, let us assume that the common operand of  $I_j$  and  $I_k$  is in a programmable register. Since each instruction either reads or writes an operand value, accesses by  $I_j$  and  $I_k$  to the common register can occur in one of four possible ways:

- Read by  $I_k$  after read by  $I_j$
- Read by  $I_k$  after write by  $I_j$
- Write by  $I_k$  after read by  $I_j$
- Write by  $I_k$  after write by  $I_j$

Of these, the first pattern of register access does not in fact create a dependence, since the two instructions can read the common value of the operand in any order.

The other three patterns of operand access do create dependences amongst instructions. Based on the underlined words shown above, these are known as *read after write* (RAW) dependence, *write after read* (WAR) dependence, and *write after write* (WAW) dependence, respectively.

Read after write (RAW) is true data dependence, in the sense that the register value written by instruction  $I_j$  is read—i.e. used—by instruction  $I_k$ . This is how computations proceed; a value produced in one step is used further in a subsequent step. Therefore RAW dependences must be respected when program instructions are executed. This type of dependence is also known as *flow dependence*.

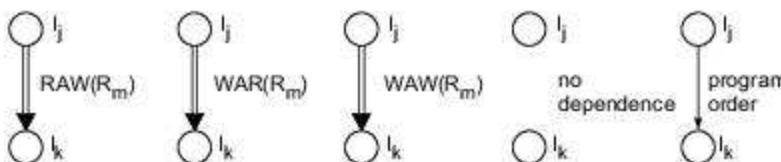
Write after read (WAR) is known as *anti-dependence*, because in this instance instruction  $I_k$  should not overwrite the value in the common register until the previous value stored therein has been used by the prior instruction  $I_j$  which needs the value. Such dependence can be removed from the executing program by simply assigning another register for the write instruction  $I_k$  to write into. With read and write occurring to two different registers, the dependence between instructions is removed. In fact, this is the basis of the *register renaming* technique which we shall discuss later in this chapter.

Write after write (WAW) is known as *output dependence*, since two instructions are writing to a common register. If this dependence is violated, then subsequent instructions will see a value in the register which should in fact have been overwritten—i.e. they will see the value written by  $I_j$  rather than  $I_k$ . This type of dependence can also be removed from the executing program by assigning another target register for the second write instruction, i.e. by *register renaming*.

Sometimes we need to show dependences between instructions using graphical notation. We shall use small circles to represent instructions, and double line arrows between two circles to denote dependences. The instruction at the head of the arrow is dependent on the instruction at the tail; if necessary, the type of dependence between instructions may be shown by appropriate notation next to the arrow. A missing arrow between two instructions will mean explicit absence of dependence.

Single line arrows will be used between instructions when we wish to denote program order without any implied dependence or absence of dependence.

Figure 12.2 illustrates this notation.



**Fig. 12.2** Dependences shown in graphical notation ( $R_m$  indicates register)

When dependences between multiple instructions are thus depicted, the result is a *directed graph* of dependences. A *node* in the graph represents an instruction, while a *directed edge* between two nodes represents a dependence.

Often dependences are thus depicted in a *basic block* of instructions—i.e. a sequence of instructions with entry only at the first instruction, and exit only at the last instruction of the sequence. In such cases, the graph of dependences becomes a *directed acyclic graph*, and the dependences define a *partial order* amongst the instructions.

Part (a) of Fig. 12.3 shows a *basic block* of six instructions, denoted  $I_1$  through  $I_6$  in program order. Entry to the basic block may be from one of multiple points within the program; continuation after the basic block would be at one of several points, depending on the outcome of conditional branch instruction at the end of the block.

Part (b) of the figure shows a possible pattern of dependences as they may exist amongst these six instructions. For simplicity, we have not shown the type of each dependence, e.g.  $\text{RAW}(R_3)$ , etc. In the partial order, we see that several pairs of instructions—such as  $(I_1, I_2)$  and  $(I_3, I_4)$ —are not related by any dependence. Therefore, amongst each of these pairs, the instructions may be executed in any order, or in parallel.

Dependences amongst instructions are inherent in the instruction stream. For processor design, the important questions are: For a given processor architecture, what is the effect of such dependences on processor performance? Do these dependences create hazards which necessitate pipeline stalls and/or flushes? Can these dependences be removed *on the fly* using some design technique? Can their adverse impact be reduced?

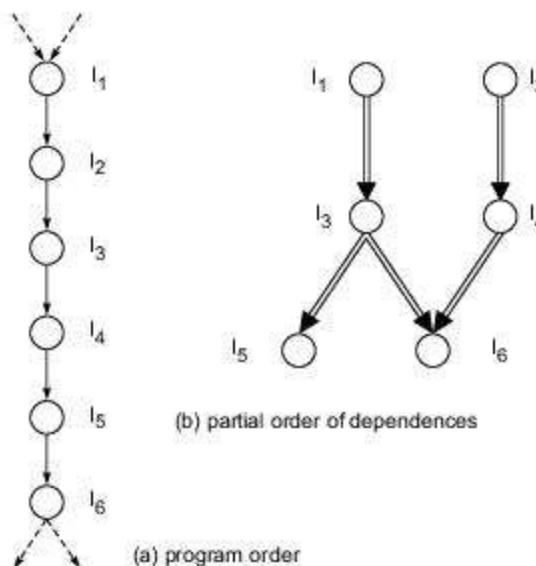


Fig. 12.3 A basic block of six instructions

Consider once again the pattern of dependences shown in Fig. 12.3(b). If the processor is capable of completing two (or more) instructions per clock cycle, and if no pipeline stalls are caused by the dependences shown, then clearly the six instructions can be completed in three consecutive processor clock cycles. Instruction latency, from fetch to commit stage, will of course depend on the depth of the pipeline.

**Control Dependences** In typical application programs, *basic blocks* tend to be small in length, since about 15% to 20% instructions in programs are branch and jump instructions, with indirect jumps and *returns* from procedure calls also included in the latter category. Because of typically small sizes of basic blocks in programs, the amount of instruction level parallelism which can be exploited in a single basic block is limited.

Assume that instruction  $I_j$  is a conditional branch and that, whether another instruction  $I_k$  executes or not depends on the outcome of the conditional branch instruction  $I_j$ . In such a case, we say that there is a *control dependence* of instruction  $I_k$  on instruction  $I_j$ .

Let us assume that a processor has instruction pipeline of depth eight, and that the designers target superscalar performance of four instructions completed in every clock cycle. Assuming no pipeline stalls, the number of instructions in the processor at any one time—in its various pipeline stages and functional units—would be  $4 \times 8 = 32$ .

If 15% to 20% of these instructions are branches and jumps, then the execution of subsequent instructions within the processor would be held up pending the resolution of conditional branches, procedure returns, and so on—causing frequent pipeline stalls.

This simple calculation shows the potential adverse impact of conditional branches on the performance of a superscalar processor. The key question here is: How can the processor designer mitigate the adverse impact of such *control dependences* in a program?

Answer: Using some form of *branch and jump prediction*—i.e. predicting early and correctly (most of the time) the results of conditional branches, indirect jumps, and procedure returns. The aim is that, for every correct prediction made, there should be no lost processor clock cycles due to the conditional branch, indirect jump, or procedure return. For every mis-prediction made, there would be the cost of flushing the pipeline of instructions from the wrong continuation after the conditional branch or jump.



## Example 12.2 Impact of successful branch prediction

Assume that we have attained 93% accuracy in branch prediction in a processor with eight pipeline stages. Assume also that the mis-prediction penalty is 4 processor clock cycles to flush the instruction pipeline. What is the performance gain from such a branch prediction strategy?

Recall that the expected cost of a random variable  $X$  is given by  $\sum x_i p_i$ , where  $x_i$  are possible values of  $X$ , and  $p_i$  are the respective probabilities. In our case, the probability of a correct branch is 0.93, and the corresponding cost is zero; the probability of a wrong branch is 0.07, and the corresponding cost is 2. Thus the expected cost of a conditional branch instruction is  $0.07 \times 4 = 0.28$  clock cycle i.e. much less than one clock cycle.

As a primitive form of branch prediction, the processor designer could assume that a conditional branch is always taken, and continue processing the instructions which follow at the target address. Let us assume that this simple strategy works 80% of the time; then the expected cost of a conditional branch is  $0.2 \times 4 = 0.8$  clock cycles.

Suppose that not even this primitive form of branch prediction is used. Then the pipeline must stall until the result of every branch condition, and the target address of every indirect jump and procedure return, is known; only then can the processor proceed with the correct continuation within the program. If we assume that in this case the pipeline stalls over half the total number of stages, then the number of lost clock cycles is 4 for every conditional branch, indirect jump and procedure return instruction.

Considering that 15% to 20% of the instructions in a program are branches and jumps, the difference in cost between 0.28 clock cycle and 4 clock cycles per branch instruction is huge, underlining the importance of branch prediction in a superscalar processor.

Later, in this chapter, we shall study the techniques employed for branch prediction.

**Resource Dependences** This is possibly the simplest kind of dependence to understand, since it refers to a resource constraint causing dependence amongst instructions needing the resource.



## Example 12.3 Resource dependence

Consider a simple pipelined processor with only one floating point multiplier, which is not internally pipelined and takes three processor clock cycles for each multiplication. Assume that several independent floating point multiply instructions follow each other in the instruction stream in a single basic block under execution.

Clearly, while the processor is executing these multiply instructions, it cannot for that duration get even one instruction completed in every clock cycle. Therefore pipeline stalls are inevitable, caused by the absence of sufficient floating point multiply capability within the processor. In fact, for the duration of these consecutive multiply operations, the processor will only complete one instruction in every three clock cycles.

We have assumed the instructions to be independent of each other, and in a single basic block—i.e. there are no conditional branches within the sequence. Thus there is no data dependence or control dependence amongst these instructions. What we have here is *resource dependence*, i.e. all the instructions depend on the resource which has not been provided to the extent it is needed for the given workload on the processor.

We can say that there is an imbalance in this processor between the floating point capability provided and the workload which is placed on it. Such imbalances in system resources usually have adverse performance impact. Recall that Example 12.1 above and the related discussion illustrated this same point in another context.

A *resource dependence* which results in a pipeline stall can arise for access to any processor resource—functional unit, data path, register bank, and so on<sup>[2]</sup>. We can certainly say that such resource dependences will arise if hardware resources provided on the processor do not match the needs of the executing program.

Now that we have seen the various types of dependences which can occur between instructions in an executing program, the problem of detecting and exploiting instruction level parallelism can finally be stated in the following manner:

**Problem Definition** Design a superscalar processor to detect and exploit the maximum degree of parallelism available in the instruction stream—i.e. execute the instructions in the smallest possible number of processor clock cycles—by handling correctly the data dependences, control dependences and resource dependences within the instruction stream.

Before we can make progress in that direction, however, it is necessary to keep in mind a prototype processor design on which the problem solution can be attempted.

## 12.4

### MODEL OF A TYPICAL PROCESSOR

We assume a processor with *load-store* instruction set architecture and a set of programmable registers as seen by the assembly language programmer or the code generator of a compiler. Whether these registers are bifurcated into separate sets of integer and floating point registers is not important for us at present, nor is the exact number of these registers.

To support parallel access to instructions and data at the level of the fastest cache, we assume that L1 cache is divided into instruction cache and data cache, and that this split L1 cache supports single cycle access for instructions as well as data. Some processors may have an *instruction buffer* in place of L1 instruction cache; for the purposes of this section, however, the difference between them is not important.

The first three pipeline stages on our prototype processor are *fetch, decode and issue*.

Following these are the various functional units of the processor, which include integer unit(s), floating point unit(s), load/store unit(s), and other units as may be needed for a specific design—as we shall see when we discuss specific design techniques.

<sup>[2]</sup>This type of dependence may also be called *structural dependence*, since it is related to the structure of the processor; however *resource dependence* is the more common term.

Let us assume that our superscalar processor is designed for  $k$  instruction issues in every processor clock cycle. Clearly then the *fetch*, *decode* and *issue* pipeline stages, as well as the other elements of the processor, must all be designed to process  $k$  instructions in every clock cycle.

On multiple issue pipelines, *issue* stage is usually separated from *decode* stage. One reason for thus increasing a pipeline stage is that it allows the processor to be driven by a faster clock. *Decode* stage must be seen as preparation for instruction *issue* which—by definition—can occur only if the relevant functional unit in the processor is in a state in which it can accept one more operation for execution. As a result of the *issue*, the operation is handed over to the functional unit for execution.

#### Note 12.1

The name of instruction *decode* stage is somewhat inaccurate, in the sense that the instruction is never fully decoded. If a 32-bit instruction is fully decoded, for example, the decoder would have some  $4 \times 10^9$  outputs! This is never done; an immediate constant is never decoded, and memory or I/O address is decoded outside the processor, in the address decoder associated with the memory or I/O module.

Register select bits in the instruction are decoded when they are used to access the register bank; similarly, ALU function bits can be decoded within the ALU. Therefore register select and ALU function bits also need not be decoded in the instruction *decode* stage of the processor.

What happens in the instruction *decode* stage of the processor is that some of the key fields of the instruction are decoded. For example, opcode bits must be decoded to select the functional unit, and addressing mode bits must be decoded to determine the operations required to calculate effective memory address.

The process of issuing instructions to functional units also involves *instruction scheduling*<sup>[3]</sup>. For example, if instruction  $I_j$  cannot be issued because the required functional unit is not free, then it may still be possible to issue the next instruction  $I_{j+1}$ —provided that no dependence between the two prohibits issuing instruction  $I_{j+1}$ .

When instruction scheduling is specified by the compiler in the machine code it generates, we refer to it as *static scheduling*. In theory, static scheduling should free up the processor hardware from the complexities of instruction scheduling; in practice, though, things do not quite turn out that way, as we shall see in the next section.

If the processor control logic schedules instruction *on the fly*—taking into account inter-instruction dependences as well as the state of the functional units—we refer to it as *dynamic scheduling*. Much of the rest of this chapter is devoted to various aspects and techniques of dynamic scheduling. Of course the basic aim in both types of scheduling—static as well as dynamic—is to maximize the instruction level parallelism which is exploited in the executing sequence of instructions.

As we have seen, at one time multiple instructions are in various stages of execution within the processor. But *processor state* and *program state* need to be maintained which are consistent with the program order of completed instructions. This is important from the point of view of preserving the semantics of the program.

Therefore, even with multiple instructions executing in parallel, the processor must arrange the results of completed instructions so that their sequence reflects program order. One way to achieve this is by using a

<sup>[3]</sup> Instruction scheduling as discussed here has some similarity with other types of task or job scheduling systems. It should be noted, of course, that a typical production system requiring job scheduling does not involve conditional branches, i.e. control dependences.

*reorder buffer*, shown in Fig.12.4, which allows instructions to be *committed* in program order, even if they execute in a different order; we shall discuss this point in some more detail in Section 12.7.

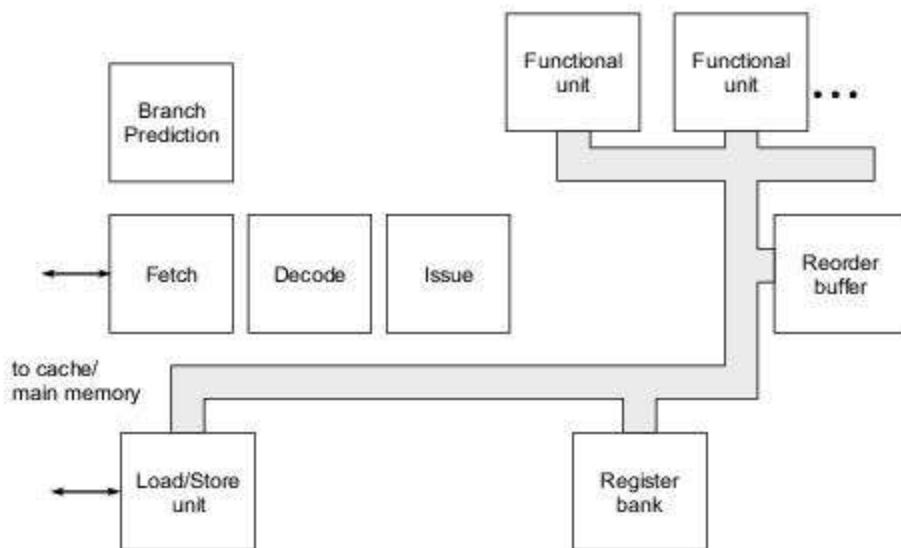


Fig. 12.4 Processor design with reorder buffer

If instructions are executed on the basis of predicted branches, before the actual branch outcome is available, we say that the processor performs *speculative execution*. In such cases, the reorder buffer will need to be cleared—wholly or partly—if the actual branch result indicates that speculation has occurred on the basis of a mis-prediction.

Functional units in the processor may themselves be internally pipelined; they may also be provided with *reservation stations*, which accept operations issued by the *issue* stage of the instruction pipeline. A functional unit performs an operation when the required operands for it are available in the reservation station. For the purposes of our discussion, memory *load-store unit(s)* may also be treated as functional units, which perform their functions with respect to the cache/memory subsystem.

Figure 12.5 shows a processor design in which functional units are provided with *reservation stations*. Such designs usually also make use of *operand forwarding* over a *common data bus* (CDB), with tags to identify the source of data on the bus. Such a design also implies *register renaming*, which resolves RAW and WAW dependences. Dynamic scheduling of instructions on such a processor is discussed in some more detail in Sections 12.8 and 12.9.

A branch prediction unit has also been shown in Fig. 12.4 and Fig. 12.5 to implement some form of a branch prediction algorithm, as discussed in Section 12.10.

Data paths connecting the various elements within the processor must be provided so that no *resource dependences*—and consequent pipeline stalls—are created for want of a data path. If  $k$  instructions are to be completed in every processor clock cycle, the data paths within the processor must support the required data transfers in each clock cycle.

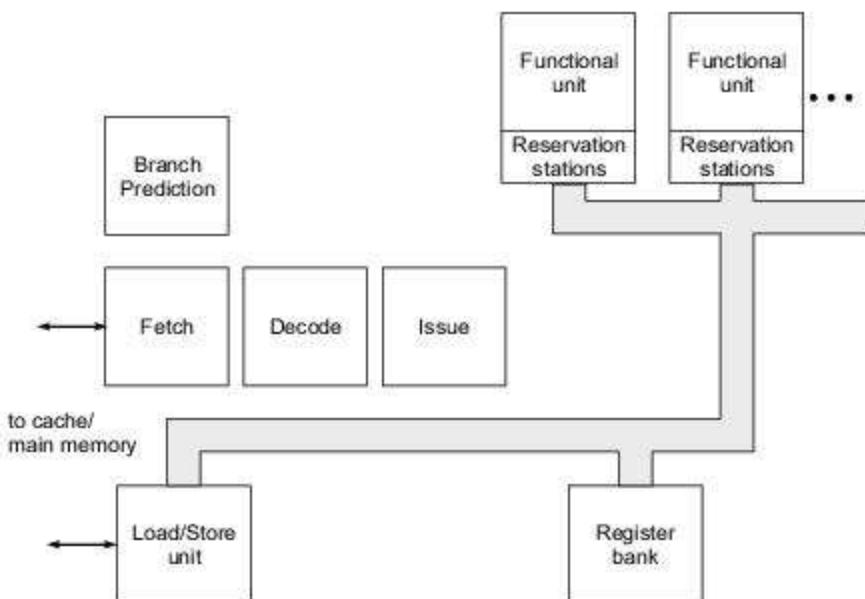


Fig. 12.5 Processor design with reservation stations on functional units

At one extreme, a primitive arrangement would be to provide a single common bus within the processor; but such a bus would become a scarce and performance limiting resource amongst multiple instructions executing in parallel within the processor.

At the other extreme, one can envisage a *complete graph* of data paths amongst the various processor elements. In such a system, in each clock cycle, any processor element can transfer data to any other processor element, with no resource dependences caused on that account. But unfortunately, for a processor with  $n$  internal elements, such a system requires  $n - 1$  data ports at every element, and is therefore not practical.

Therefore, between the two extremes outlined above, processor designers must aim for an optimum design of internal processor data paths, appropriate for the given instruction set and the targeted processor performance. This point will be discussed further in Section 12.6, when we discuss a technique known as *operand forwarding*.

As mentioned above, the important question of defining *program* (or *thread*) *state* and *processor state* must also be addressed. If a context switch, interrupt or exception occurs, the program/thread state and processor state must be saved, and then restored at a later time when the same program/thread resumes. From the programmer's point of view, the state should correspond to a point in the machine language program at which the previous instruction has completed execution, but the next one has not started.

In a multiple-issue processor, clearly this requires careful thought—since, at any time, as many as a couple of dozen instructions may be in various stages of execution.

A processor of the type described here is often designed with hardware support for *multi-threading*, which requires maintaining thread status of multiple threads, and switching between threads; this type of design is discussed further in Section 12.12.

Note also that, in Fig. 12.4 and Fig. 12.5, we have separated control elements from data flow elements and functional units in the processor—and in fact shown only the latter. Design of the control logic needed for the processor will not be discussed in this chapter in any degree of detail, beyond the brief overview contained in Note 12.2.

### Note 12.2

The processor designer must select the architectural components to be included in the processor—for example a *reorder buffer* of a particular type, a specific method of *operand forwarding*, a specific method of *branch prediction*, and so on. The designer must also specify fully the algorithms which will govern the working of the selected architectural components. These algorithms are very similar to the algorithms we write in higher level programming languages, and are written using similar languages. These algorithms specify the control logic that would be needed for the processor, which would be finally realized in the form of appropriate digital logic circuits.

Given the complexity of modern systems, the task of translating algorithmic descriptions of processor functions into digital logic circuits can only be carried out using very sophisticated VLSI design software. Such software offers a wide range of functionality; *simulation* software is used to verify the correctness of the selected algorithm; *logical design* software translates the algorithm into a digital circuit; *physical design* software translates the logical circuit design into a physical circuit which can be built using VLSI, while *design verification* software verifies that the physical design does not violate any constraints of the underlying circuit fabrication technology.

All the architectural elements and control logic which is being described in this chapter can thus be translated into a physical design and then realized in VLSI. This is how processors and other digital systems are designed and built today. For our purposes in this chapter, however, it is not necessary to go into the details of how the required circuits and control logic are to be realized in VLSI.

We take the view that the architect decides *what* is to be designed, and then the circuit designer designs and realizes the circuit accordingly. In other words, our subject matter is restricted to the functions of the architect, and does not extend to circuit design—i.e. to the question of *how* a particular function is to be realized in VLSI. We assume that any required control logic which can be clearly specified can be implemented.



12.5

## COMPILER-DETECTED INSTRUCTION LEVEL PARALLELISM

In the process of translating a sequential source program into machine language, the compiler performs extensive syntactic and semantic analysis of the source program. Therefore computer scientists have considered carefully the question of whether the compiler can uncover the instruction level parallelism which is implicit in the program. As we shall see, there are several ways in which the compiler can contribute to the exploitation of implicit instruction level parallelism.

One relatively simple technique which the compiler can employ is known as *loop unrolling*, by which independent instructions from multiple successive iterations of a loop can be made to execute in parallel.

*Unrolling* means that the body of the loop is repeated  $n$  times for  $n$  successive values of the control variable—so that one iteration of the transformed loop performs the work of  $n$  iterations of the original loop.



## Example 12.4 Loop unrolling

Consider the following body of a loop in a user program, where all the variables except the loop control variable  $i$  are assumed to be floating point:

```
for i = 0 to 58 do  
    c[i] = a[i]*b[i] - p*d[i];
```

Now suppose that machine code is generated by the compiler as though the original program had been written as:

```
for j = 0 to 52 step 4 do  
{  
    c[j] = a[j]*b[j] - p*d[j];  
    c[j+1] = a[j+1]*b[j+1] - p*d[j+1];  
    c[j+2] = a[j+2]*b[j+2] - p*d[j+2];  
    c[j+3] = a[j+3]*b[j+3] - p*d[j+3];  
}  
c[56] = a[56]*b[56] - p*d[56];  
c[57] = a[57]*b[57] - p*d[57];  
c[58] = a[58]*b[58] - p*d[58];
```

Note carefully the values of loop variable  $j$  in the transformed loop.

The reader may verify, without too much difficulty, that the two program fragments are equivalent, in the sense that they perform the same computation. Of course the compiler does not transform one source program into another—it simply produces machine code corresponding to the second version, with the *unrolled* loop.

In the unrolled program fragment, the loop contains four independent instances of the original loop body—indeed this is the meaning of *loop unrolling*. Suppose machine code corresponding to the second program fragment is executing on a processor. Then clearly—if the processor has sufficient floating point arithmetic resources—instructions from the four loop iterations can be in progress in parallel on the various functional units.

It is clear that code length of the machine language program increases as a result of loop unrolling; this increase may have an effect on the cache hit ratio. Also, more registers are needed to exploit the instruction level parallelism within the longer unrolled loop. In such cases, techniques such as *register renaming*—discussed in Section 12.8—can allow greater exploitation of instruction level parallelism in the unrolled loop.

To discover and exploit the parallelism implicit in loops, as seen in Example 12.4, the compiler must perform the *loop unrolling* transformation to generate the machine code. Clearly, this strategy makes sense only if sufficient hardware resources are provided within the processor for executing instructions in parallel.

In the simple example above, the loop control variable in the original program goes from 0 to 58—i.e. its initial and final values are both known at compile time. If, on the other hand, the loop control values are not known at compile time, the compiler must generate code to calculate at run-time the control values for the unrolled loop.

Note that loop unrolling by the compiler does not in itself involve the detection of instruction level parallelism. But loop unrolling makes it possible for the compiler or the processor hardware to exploit a greater degree of instruction level parallelism. In Example 12.4, since the basic block making up the loop body becomes longer, it becomes possible for the compiler or processor to find a greater degree of parallelism amongst the instructions across the unrolled loop iterations.

Can the compiler also do the additional work of actually scheduling machine instructions on the hardware resources available on the processor? Or must this scheduling be necessarily performed *on the fly* by the processor control logic?

When the compiler schedules machine instructions for execution on the processor, the form of scheduling is known as *static scheduling*. As against this, instruction scheduling carried out by the processor hardware *on the fly* is known as *dynamic scheduling*, which has been introduced in Chapter 6 and will be discussed further later in this chapter.

If the compiler is to schedule machine instructions, then it must perform the required dependence analysis amongst instructions. This is certainly possible, since the compiler has access to full semantic information obtained from the original source program.



## Example 12.5 Dependence across loop iterations

Consider the following loop in a source program, which appears similar to the loop seen in the previous example, but has a crucial new dependence built into it:

```
for i = 0 to 58 do
    c[i] = a[i]*b[i] - p*c[i-1];
```

Now the value calculated in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  iteration of the loop makes use of the value  $c[i-1]$  calculated in the previous iteration. This does not mean that the modified loop cannot be unrolled, but only that extra care should be taken to account for the dependence.

Dependences amongst references to simple variables, or amongst array elements whose index values are known at compile time (as in the two examples seen above), can be analyzed relatively easily at compile time.

But when pointers are used to refer to locations in memory, or when array index values are known only at run-time, then clearly dependence analysis is not possible at compile time. Therefore processor hardware must provide support at run-time for *alias analysis*—i.e. based on the respective effective addresses, to determine whether two memory accesses for read or write operations refer to the same location.

There is another reason why static scheduling by the compiler must be backed up by dynamic scheduling by the processor hardware. Cache misses, I/O interrupts, and hardware exceptions cannot be predicted

at compile time. Therefore, apart from *alias analysis*, the disruptions caused by such events in statically scheduled running code must also be handled by the dynamic scheduling hardware in the processor.

These arguments bring out a basic point—compiler detected instruction level parallelism also requires dynamic scheduling support within the processor. The fact that compiler performs extra work does not really make the processor hardware much simpler<sup>[4]</sup>.

A further step in the direction of compiler detected instruction level parallelism and static scheduling can be the following:

Suppose each machine instruction specifies multiple operations—to be carried out in parallel within the processor, on multiple functional units. The machine language program produced by the compiler then consists of such multi-operation instructions, and their scheduling takes into account all the dependences amongst instructions.

Recall that conventional machine instructions specify one operation each—e.g. *load*, *add*, *multiply*, and so on. As opposed to this, multi-operation instructions would require a larger number of bits to encode. Therefore processors with this type of instruction word are said to have *very long instruction word* (VLIW). A preliminary discussion of this concept has been included in Chapter 4 of the book.

A little further refinement of this concept brings us to the so-called *explicitly parallel instruction computer* (EPIC). The EPIC instruction format can be more flexible than the fixed format of multi-operation VLIW instruction; for example, it may allow the compiler to encode explicitly dependences between operations.

Another possibility is that of having *predicated instructions* in the instruction set, whereby an instruction is executed only if the hardware condition (predicate) specified with it holds true. Such instructions would result in reduced number of conditional branch instructions in the program, and could thereby lower the number of pipeline flushes.

The aim behind VLIW and EPIC processor architecture is to assign to the compiler primary responsibility for the parallel exploitation of plentiful hardware resources of the processor. In theory, this would simplify the processor hardware, allowing for increased aggregate processor throughput. Thus this approach would, in theory, provide a third alternative to the RISC and CISC styles of processor architecture.

In general, however, it is fair to say that VLIW and EPIC concepts have not fulfilled their original promise. Intel Itanium 64-bit processors make up the most well-known processor family of this class. Experience with that processor showed, as was argued briefly above, that processor hardware does not really become simpler even when the compiler bears primary responsibility for the detection and exploitation of instruction level parallelism. Events such as interrupts and cache misses remain unpredictable, and therefore execution of operations at run-time cannot follow completely the static scheduling specified in VLIW/ EPIC instructions by the compiler; dynamic scheduling is still needed.

Another practical difficulty with compiler detected instruction level parallelism is that the source program may have to be recompiled for a different processor model of the same processor family. The reason is simple: such a compiler depends not only on the instruction set architecture (ISA) of the processor family, but also on the hardware resources provided on the specific processor model for which it generates code.

<sup>[4]</sup> Recall in this context the basic argument for RISC architecture, whereby the instruction set is *reduced* for the sake of higher processor throughput. A similar trade-off between hardware and software complexity does not exist when the compiler performs static scheduling of instructions on a superscalar processor.

For highly compute-intensive applications which run on dedicated hardware platforms, this strategy may well be feasible and it may yield significant performance benefits. Such special-purpose applications are fine-tuned for a given hardware platform, and then run for long periods on the same dedicated platform.

But commonly used programs such as word processors, web browsers, and spreadsheets must run without recompilation on all the processors of a family. Most users of software do not have source programs to recompile, and all the processors of a family are expected to be instruction set compatible with one another. Therefore the role of compiler-detected instruction level parallelism is limited in the case of widely used general purpose application programs of the type mentioned.

## 12.6

## OPERAND FORWARDING

We know that a superscalar processor offers opportunities for the detection and exploitation of instruction level parallelism—i.e. potential parallelism which is present within a single instruction stream. Exploitation of such parallelism is enhanced by providing multiple functional units and by other techniques that we shall study. True data dependences between instructions must of course be respected, since they reflect program logic. On the other hand, two independent instructions can be executed in parallel—or even out of sequence—if that results in better utilization of processor clock cycles.

We now know that pipeline *flushes* caused by conditional branch, indirect jump, and procedure return instructions lead to degradation in performance, and therefore attempts must be made to minimize them; similarly pipeline *stalls* caused by data dependences and cache misses also have adverse impact on processor performance.

Therefore the strategy should be to minimize the number of pipeline stalls and flushes encountered while executing an instruction stream. In other words, we must minimize wasted processor clock cycles within the pipeline and also, if possible, within the various functional units of the processor.

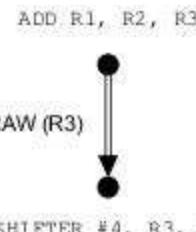
In this section, we take a look at a basic technique known as *operand forwarding*, which helps in reducing the impact of true data dependences in the instruction stream. Consider the following simple sequence of two instructions in a running program:

```
ADD      R1, R2, R3
SHIFTR   #4, R3, R4
```

The result of the ADD instruction is stored in destination register R3, and then shifted right by four bits in the second instruction, with the shifted value being placed in R4. Thus, there is a simple RAW dependence between the two instructions—the output of the first is required as input operand of the second.

In terms of our notation, this RAW dependence appears as shown in Fig. 12.6, in the form of a graph with two nodes and one edge.

In a pipelined processor, ideally the second instruction should be executed one stage—and therefore one clock cycle—behind the first. However, the difficulty here is that it takes one clock cycle to transfer ALU output to destination register R3, and then another clock cycle to transfer the contents of



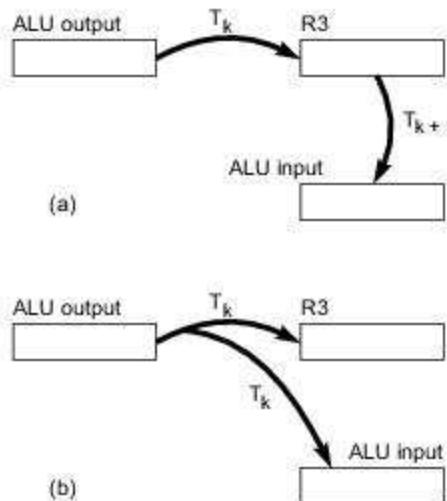
**Fig. 12.6** RAW dependence between two instructions

register R3 to ALU input for the right shift. Thus a total of two clock cycles are needed to bring the result of the first instruction where it is needed for the second instruction. Therefore, as things stand, the second instruction above cannot be executed just one clock cycle behind the first.

This sequence of data transfers has been illustrated in Fig. 12.7 (a). In clock cycle  $T_k$ , ALU output is transferred to R3 over an internal data path. In the next clock cycle  $T_{k+1}$ , the content of R3 is transferred to ALU input for the right shift. When carried out in this order, clearly the two data transfer operations take two clock cycles.

But note that the required two transfers of data can be achieved in only one clock cycle if ALU output is sent to both R3 and ALU input in the same clock cycle—as illustrated in Fig. 12.7 (b). In general, if X is to be copied to Y, and in the next clock cycle Y is to be copied to Z, then we can just as well copy X to both Y and Z in one clock cycle.

If this is done in the above sequence of instructions, the second instruction can be just one clock cycle behind the first, which is a basic requirement of an instruction pipeline.



**Fig. 12.7** Two data transfers (a) in sequence and (b) in parallel

In technical terms, this type of an operation within a processor is known as *operand forwarding*. Basically this means that, instead of performing two or more data transfers from a common source one after the other, we perform them in parallel. This can be seen as parallelism at the level of elementary data transfer operations within the processor. To achieve this aim, the processor hardware must be designed to detect and exploit *on the fly* all such opportunities for saving clock cycles. We shall see later in this chapter one simple and elegant technique for achieving this aim.

The benefits of such a technique are easy to see. The wait within a functional unit for its operand becomes shorter because, as soon as it is available, the operand is sent in one clock cycle, over the common data bus, to every destination where it is needed. We saw in the above example that thereby the common data bus remained occupied for one clock cycle rather than two clock cycles. Since this bus itself is a key hardware resource, its better utilization in this way certainly contributes to better processor performance.

The above reasoning applies even if there is an intervening instruction between ADD and SHIFTR. Consider the following sequence of instructions:

|        |            |
|--------|------------|
| ADD    | R1, R2, R3 |
| SUB    | R5, R6, R7 |
| SHIFTR | #4, R3, R4 |

SHIFTR must be executed after ADD, in view of the RAW dependence. But there is no such dependence between SUB and any of the other two instructions, which means that SUB can be executed in program order, or before ADD, or after SHIFTR.

If SUB is executed in program order, then even without operand forwarding between ADD and SHIFTR, no processor clock cycle is lost, since SHIFTR does not directly follow ADD. But now suppose SUB is executed either before ADD, or after SHIFTR. In both these cases, SHIFTR directly follows ADD, and therefore operand forwarding proves useful in saving a processor cycle, as we have seen above.

Figure 12.8 shows the dependence graph of these three instructions. Since there is only one dependence in this instance amongst the three instructions, the graph in the figure has three nodes and only one edge.

But *why* should SUB be executed in any order other than program order?

The answer can only be this: to achieve better utilization of processor clock cycles. For example, if for some reason ADD cannot be executed in a given clock cycle, then the processor may well decide to execute SUB before it.

Therefore the processor must make *on the fly* decisions such as

- (i) transferring ALU output in parallel to both R3 and ALU input, and/or
- (ii) out of order execution of the instruction SUB.

This implies that the control logic of the processor must detect any such possibilities and generate the required control signals. This is in fact what is needed to implement *dynamic scheduling* of machine instructions within the processor.

Of course, to achieve performance speed-up through dynamic scheduling, considerable complexity must be added to processor control logic—but that is a price which must be paid for exploiting instruction level parallelism in the sequence of executing instructions; the complexity in achieving superscalar performance would of course be greater.

Machine instructions of a typical processor can be classified into *data transfer* instructions, *arithmetic and logic* instructions, *comparison* instructions, *transfer of control* instructions, and other miscellaneous instructions.

Of these, only the second group of instructions—i.e. arithmetic and logic instructions—actually alter the values of their operands. The other groups of instructions involve only transfers of data within the processor, between the processor and main memory, or between the processor and an I/O adapter.

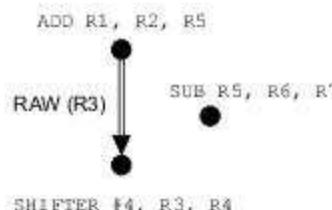


Fig. 12.8 Dependence graph of three instructions

Arithmetic and logic instructions are basically functions to be computed—either unary functions of the form  $y = f(x)$ , or binary functions of the form  $y = f(x_1, x_2)$ . And these computations are carried out by functional units such as *arithmetic and logic unit* (ALU), *floating point unit* (FPU), and so on. But even to get any computations done by these functional units, we need (i) transfer of operands to the inputs of functional units, and (ii) transfer of results back to registers or to the reorder buffer.

From the above arguments, it should be clear that data transfers make up a large proportion of the work of any processor. The need to fully utilize available hardware resources forces designers to pay close attention to the data transfers required not only for a single executing instruction, but also across multiple instructions. In this context, operand forwarding can be seen as a potentially powerful technique to reduce the number of clock cycles spent in carrying out the required data transfers within the processor.

In Fig. 12.4 and Fig. 12.5, we have not shown details of the data paths connecting the various elements within the processor. This is intentional, because the nature and number of data paths, their widths, their access mechanisms, *et cetera*, must be designed to be consistent with (i) the various hardware resources provided within the processor, and (ii) the target performance of the processor. Details of the data paths cannot be pinned down at an early stage, when the rest of the design is not yet completed.

We have discussed earlier a basic point related to any system performance: *there should be no performance bottlenecks in the system*. Clearly therefore the system of data paths provided within the processor should also not become a performance limiting element. A multiple issue processor targets  $k > 1$  instruction issues per processor clock cycle. Hence the demands made on each of the elements of the processor—including cache memories, functional units, and internal data paths—would be  $k$  times greater.

## 12.7 REORDER BUFFER

The *reorder buffer* as a processor element was introduced and discussed briefly in Section 12.4. Since instructions execute in parallel on multiple functional units, the reorder buffer serves the function of bringing completed instructions back into an order which is consistent with program order. Note that instructions may *complete* in an order which is not related to program order, but must be *committed* in program order.

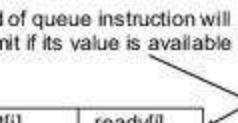
At any time, *program state* and *processor state* are defined in terms of instructions which have been committed—i.e. their results are reflected in appropriate registers and/or memory locations. The concepts of program state and processor state are important in supporting context switches and in providing precise exceptions.

Entries in the reorder buffer are completed instructions, which are queued in program order. However, since instructions do not necessarily complete in program order, we also need a flag with each reorder buffer entry to indicate whether the instruction in that position has completed.

Figure 12.9 shows a reorder buffer of size eight. Four fields are shown with each entry in the reorder buffer—instruction identifier, value computed, program-specified destination of the value computed, and a flag indicating whether the instruction has completed (i.e. the computed value is available).

In Fig. 12.9, the head of queue of instructions is shown at the top, arbitrarily labeled as  $\text{instr}[i]$ . This is the instruction which would be committed next—if it has completed execution. When this instruction commits,

its result value is copied to its destination, and the instruction is then removed from the reorder buffer. The next instruction to be issued in the *issue* stage of the instruction pipeline then joins the reorder buffer at its tail.



The diagram shows a callout arrow pointing from the text "Head of queue instruction will commit if its value is available" to the first row of the table below.

| instr[i]   | value[i]   | dest[i]   | ready[i]   |
|------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| instr[i+1] | value[i+1] | dest[i+1] | ready[i+1] |
| instr[i+2] | value[i+2] | dest[i+2] | ready[i+2] |
| instr[i+3] | value[i+3] | dest[i+3] | ready[i+3] |
| instr[i+4] | value[i+4] | dest[i+4] | ready[i+4] |
| instr[i+5] | value[i+5] | dest[i+5] | ready[i+5] |
| instr[i+6] | value[i+6] | dest[i+6] | ready[i+6] |
| instr[i+7] | value[i+7] | dest[i+7] | ready[i+7] |

Fig. 12.9 Entries in a reorder buffer of size eight

If the instruction at the head of the queue has not completed, and the reorder buffer is full, then further issue of instructions is held up—i.e. the pipeline stalls—because there is no free space in the reorder buffer for one more entry.

The result value of any other instruction lower down in the reorder buffer, say  $\text{value}[i+k]$ , can also be used as an input operand for a subsequent operation—provided of course that the instruction has completed and therefore its result value is available, as indicated by the corresponding flag  $\text{ready}[i+k]$ . In this sense, we see that the technique of *operand forwarding* can be combined with the concept of the reorder buffer.

It should be noted here that operands at the input latches of functional units, as well as values stored in the reorder buffer on behalf of completed but uncommitted instructions, are simply ‘work in progress’. These values are not reflected in the state of the program or the processor, as needed for a context switch or for exception handling.

We now take a brief look at how the use of reorder buffer addresses the various types of dependences in the program.

**(i) Data Dependences** A RAW dependence—i.e. true data dependence—will hold up the execution of the dependent instruction if the result value required as its input operand is not available. As suggested above, operand forwarding can be added to this scheme to speed up the supply of the needed input operand as soon as its value has been computed.

WAR and WAW dependences—i.e. anti-dependence and output dependence, respectively—also hold up the execution of the dependent instruction and create a possible pipeline stall. We shall see below that the technique of *register renaming* is needed to avoid the adverse impact of these two types of dependences.

**(ii) Control Dependences** Suppose the instruction(s) in the reorder buffer belong to a branch in the program which should not have been taken—i.e. there has been a mis-predicted branch. Clearly then the

reorder buffer should be flushed along with other elements of the pipeline. Therefore the performance impact of control dependences in the running program is determined by the accuracy of branch prediction technique employed. The reorder buffer plays no direct role in the handling of control dependences.

**(iii) Resource Dependences** If an instruction needs a functional unit to execute, but the unit is not free, then the instruction must wait for the unit to become free—clearly no technique in the world can change that. In such cases, the processor designer can aim to achieve at least this: if a subsequent instruction needs to use another functional unit which is free, then the subsequent instruction can be executed out of order.

However, the reorder buffer queues and commits instructions in program order. In this sense, therefore, the technique of using a reorder buffer does not address explicitly the resource dependences existing within the instruction stream; with multiple functional units, the processor can still achieve out of order completion of instructions.

In essence, the conceptually simple technique of reorder buffer ensures that if instructions as programmed can be carried out in parallel—i.e. if there are no dependences amongst them—then they are carried out in parallel. But nothing clever is attempted in this technique to resolve dependences. Instruction issue and commit are in program order; program state and processor state are correctly preserved.

We shall now discuss a clever technique which alleviates the adverse performance effect of WAR and WAW dependences amongst instructions.

## 12.8

## REGISTER RENAMING

Traditional compilers allocate registers to program variables in such a way as to reduce the main memory accesses required in the running program. In programming language C, in fact, the programmer can even pass a hint to the compiler that a variable be maintained in a processor register.

Traditional compilers and assembly language programmers work with a fairly small number of programmable registers. The number of programmable registers provided on a processor is determined by either

- the need to maintain backward instruction compatibility with other members of the processor family, or
- the need to achieve reasonably compact instruction encoding in binary. With sixteen programmable registers, for example, four bits are needed for each register specified in a machine instruction.

Amongst the instructions in various stages of execution within the processor, there would be occurrences of RAW, WAR and WAW dependences on programmable registers. As we have seen, RAW is true data dependence—since a value written by one instruction is used as an input operand by another. But a WAR or WAW dependence can be avoided if we have more registers to work with. We can simply remove such a dependence by getting the two instructions in question to use two different registers.

But we must also assume that the *instruction set architecture* (ISA) of the processor is fixed—i.e. we cannot change it to allow access to a larger number of programmable registers. Rather, our aim here is to explore techniques to detect and exploit instruction level parallelism using a given instruction set architecture.

Therefore the only way to make a larger number of registers available to instructions under execution within the processor is to make the additional registers *invisible* to machine language instructions. Instructions *under execution* would use these additional registers, even if instructions making up the machine language program stored in memory cannot refer to them.

Let us suppose that we have several such additional registers available, to which machine instructions of the running program cannot make any direct reference. Of course these machine instructions do refer to programmable registers in the processor—and thereby create the WAR and WAW dependences which we are now trying to remove.

For example, let us say that the instruction:

FADD R1, R2, R5

is followed by the instruction:

FSUB R3, R4, R5

Both these instructions are writing to register R5, creating thereby a WAW dependence—i.e. output dependence—on register R5. Clearly, any subsequent instruction should read the value written into R5 by FSUB, and not the value written by FADD. Figure 12.10 shows this dependence in graphical notation.

With additional registers available for use as these instructions execute, we have a simple technique to remove this output dependence.

Let FSUB write its output value to a register other than R5, and let us call that other register X. Then the instructions which use the value generated by FSUB will refer to X, while the instructions which use the value generated by FADD will continue to refer to R5. Now, since FADD and FSUB are writing to two different registers, the output dependence or WAW between them has been removed!<sup>[5]</sup>

When FSUB *commits*, then the value in R5 should be updated by the value in X—i.e. the value computed by FSUB. Then the physical register X, which is not a program visible register, can be freed up for use in another such situation.

Note that here we have *mapped*—or *renamed*—R5 to X, for the purpose of storing the result of FSUB, and thereby removed the WAW dependence from the instruction stream. A pipeline stall will now not be created due to the WAW dependence.

In general, let us assume that instruction I<sub>j</sub> writes a value into register R<sub>k</sub>. At the time of instruction issue, we map this programmable register R<sub>k</sub> onto a program invisible register X<sub>m</sub>, so that when instruction I<sub>j</sub> executes, the result is written into X<sub>m</sub> rather than R<sub>k</sub>. In this program invisible register X<sub>m</sub>, the result value is available to any other instruction which is truly data dependent on I<sub>j</sub>—i.e. which has RAW dependence on I<sub>j</sub>.

If any instruction other than I<sub>j</sub> is also writing into R<sub>k</sub>, then that instance of R<sub>k</sub> will be mapped into some other program invisible register X<sub>n</sub>. This renaming resolves the WAW dependence between the two instructions involving R<sub>k</sub>. When instruction I<sub>j</sub> commits, the value in X<sub>m</sub> is copied back into R<sub>k</sub>, and the program invisible register X<sub>m</sub> is freed up for reuse by another instruction.

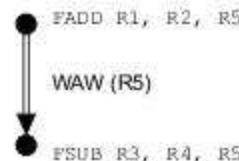


Fig. 12.10 WAW dependence

<sup>[5]</sup> In fact the processor may also rename R5 in FADD to another program invisible register, say Y. But clearly the argument made here still remains valid.

A similar argument applies if  $I_j$  is reading the value in  $R_k$ , and a subsequent instruction is writing into  $R_k$ —i.e. there is a WAR dependence between them.

The technique outlined, which can resolve WAR and WAW dependences, is known as *register renaming*. Both these dependences are caused by a subsequent instruction writing into a register being used by a previous instruction. Such dependences do not reflect program logic, but rather the use of a limited number of registers.

Let us now consider a simple example of WAR dependence, i.e. of anti-dependence. The case of WAW dependence would be very similar.



## Example 12.6 Register renaming and WAR dependence

Assume that the instructions:

```
FADD      R6, R7, R2
FADD      R2, R3, R5
```

are followed later in the program by the instruction:

```
FSUB      R1, R3, R2
```

The first FADD instruction is writing a value into R2, which the second FADD instruction is using, i.e. there is true data dependence between these two instructions. Let us assume that, when the first FADD instruction executes, R2 is mapped into program invisible register  $X_m$ .

The latter FSUB instruction is writing another value into R2. Clearly, the second FADD (and other intervening instructions before FSUB) should see the value in R2 which is written by the first FADD—and not the value written by FSUB. Figure 12.11 shows these two dependences in graphical notation.

With register renaming, it is a simple matter to resolve the WAR anti-dependence between the second FADD and FSUB.

As mentioned, let  $X_m$  be the program invisible register to which R2 has been mapped when the first FADD executes. This is then the remapped register to which the second FADD refers for its first data operand.

Let FSUB write its output to a program invisible register other than  $X_m$ , which we denote by  $X_n$ . Instructions which use the value written by FSUB refer to  $X_n$ , while instructions which use the value written by the first FADD refer to  $X_m$ .

The WAR dependence between the second FADD and FSUB is removed; but the RAW dependence between the two FADD instructions is respected via  $X_m$ .

When the first FADD commits, the value in  $X_m$  is transferred to R2 and program invisible register  $X_m$  is freed up; likewise, later when FSUB commits, the value in  $X_n$  is transferred to R2 and program invisible register  $X_m$  is freed up.

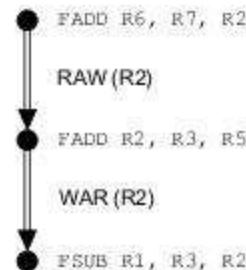


Fig. 12.11 RAW and WAR dependences

Thus we see that register renaming removes WAR and WAW dependences from the instruction stream by re-mapping programmable registers to a larger pool of program invisible registers. For this, the processor must have extra registers to handle instructions under execution, but these registers do not appear in the instruction set.

Consider true data dependence, i.e. RAW dependence, between two instructions. Under register renaming, the write operation and the subsequent read operation both occur on the same program invisible register. Thus RAW dependence remains intact in the instruction stream—as it should, since it is true data dependence. As seen above, its impact on the pipeline operation can be reduced by operand forwarding.

Dependences are also caused by reads and writes to memory locations. In general, however, whether two instructions refer to the same memory location can only be known after the two effective addresses are calculated during execution. For example, the two memory references 2000[R1] and 4000[R3] occurring in a running program may or may not refer to the same memory location—this cannot be resolved at compile time.

Resolution of whether two memory references point to the same memory location is known as *alias analysis*, which must be carried out on the basis of the two effective memory addresses. If a *load* and a *store* operation to memory refer to two different addresses, their order may be interchanged. Such capability can be built into the load-store unit—which in essence operates as another functional unit of the processor.

An elegant implementation of register renaming and operand forwarding in a high performance processor was seen as early as in 1967—even before the term *register renaming* was coined. This technique—which has since become well-known as *Tomasulo's algorithm*—is described in the next section.

## 12.9

### TOMASULO'S ALGORITHM

In the IBM 360 family of computer systems of 1960s and 1970s, model 360/91 was developed as a high performance system for scientific and engineering applications, which involve intensive floating point computations. The processor in this system was designed with multiple floating point units, and it made use of an innovative algorithm for the efficient use of these units. The algorithm was based on operand forwarding over a common data bus, with tags to identify sources of data values sent over the bus.

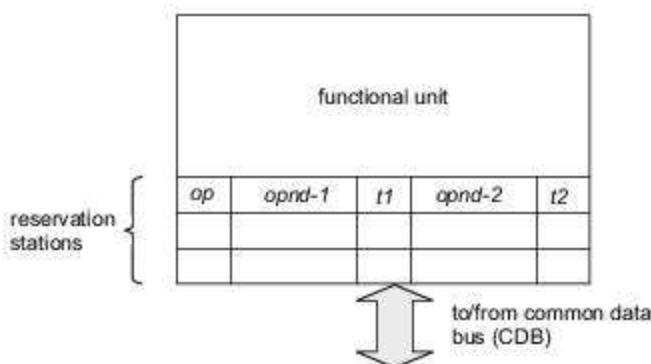
The algorithm has since become known as *Tomasulo's algorithm*, after the name of its chief designer<sup>[6]</sup>, what we now understand as *register renaming* was also an implicit part of the original algorithm.

Recall that, for register renaming, we need a set of program invisible registers to which programmable registers are re-mapped. Tomasulo's algorithm requires these program invisible registers to be provided with reservation stations of functional units.

Let us assume that the functional units are internally pipelined, and can complete one operation in every clock cycle. Therefore each functional unit can initiate one operation in every clock cycle—provided of course that a reservation station of the unit is ready with the required input operand value or values. Note that the exact depth of this functional unit pipeline does not concern us for the present.

<sup>[6]</sup> See *An efficient algorithm for exploiting multiple arithmetic units*, by R. M. Tomasulo, IBM Journal of Research & Development 11:1, January 1967. A preliminary discussion on Tomasulo's algorithm was included in Chapter 6.

Figure 12.12 shows such a functional unit connected to the common data bus, with three reservation stations provided on it.



**Fig. 12.12** Reservation stations provided with a functional unit

The various fields making up a typical reservation station are as follows:

- op* operation to be carried out by the functional unit
- opnd-1 &*
- opnd-2* two operand values needed for the operation
- t1 & t2* two source tags associated with the operands

When the needed operand value or values are available in a reservation station, the functional unit can initiate the required operation in the next clock cycle.

At the time of instruction issue, the reservation station is filled out with the operation code (*op*). If an operand value is available, for example in a programmable register, it is transferred to the corresponding source operand field in the reservation station.

However, if the operand value is not available at the time of issue, the corresponding source tag (*t1* and/or *t2*) is copied into the reservation station. The source tag identifies the source of the required operand. As soon as the required operand value is available at its source—which would be typically the output of a functional unit—the data value is forwarded over the common data bus, along with the source tag. This value is copied into all the reservation station operand slots which have the matching tag.

Thus operand forwarding is achieved here with the use of tags. All the destinations which require a data value receive it in the same clock cycle over the common data bus, by matching their stored operand tags with the source tag sent out over the bus.



### Example 12.7 Tomasulo's algorithm and RAW dependence

Assume that instruction I1 is to write its result into R4, and that two subsequent instructions I2 and I3 are to read—i.e. make use of—that result value. Thus instructions I2 and I3 are truly data dependent (RAW dependent) on instruction I1. See Fig. 12.13.

Assume that the value in R4 is not available when I2 and I3 are issued; the reason could be, for example, that one of the operands needed for I1 is itself not available. Thus we assume that I1 has not even started executing when I2 and I3 are issued.

When I2 and I3 are issued, they are parked in the reservation stations of the appropriate functional units. Since the required result value from I1 is not available, these reservation station entries of I2 and I3 get source tag corresponding to the output of I1—i.e. output of the functional unit which is performing the operation of I1.

When the result of I1 becomes available at its functional unit, it is sent over the common data bus along with the tag value of its source—i.e. output of functional unit.

At this point, programmable register R4 as well as the reservation stations assigned to I2 and I3 have the matching source tag—since they are waiting for the same result value, which is being computed by I1.

When the tag sent over the common data bus matches the tag in any destination, the data value on the bus is copied from the bus into the destination. The copy occurs at the same time into all the destinations which require that data value. Thus R4 as well as the two reservation stations holding I2 and I3 receive the required data value, which has been computed by I1, at the same time over the common data bus.

Thus, through the use of source tags and the common data bus, in one clock cycle, three destination registers receive the value produced by I1—programmable register R4, and the operand registers in the reservation stations assigned to I2 and I3.

Let us assume that, at this point, the second operands of I2 and I3 are already available within their corresponding reservation stations. Then the operations corresponding to I2 and I3 can begin in parallel as soon as the result of I1 becomes available—since we have assumed here that I2 and I3 execute on two separate functional units.

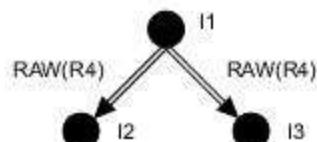
It may be noted from Example 12.7 that, in effect, programmable registers become renamed to operand registers within reservation stations, which are program invisible. As we have seen in the previous section, such renaming also resolves anti-dependences and output dependences, since the target register of the dependent instruction is renamed in these cases to a different program invisible register.



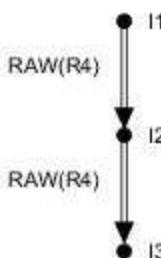
### Example 12.8 Combination of RAW and WAR dependence

Let us now consider a combination of RAW and WAR dependences.

Assume that instruction I1 is to write its result into R4, a subsequent instruction I2 is to read that result value, and a latter subsequent instruction I3 is then to write its result into R4. Thus instruction I2 is truly data dependent (RAW dependent) on instruction I1, but I3 is anti-dependent (WAR dependent) on I2. See Fig. 12.14.



**Fig. 12.13** Example of RAW dependences



**Fig. 12.14 Example of RAW & WAR dependences**

As in the previous example, and keeping in mind similar possibilities, let us assume once again that the output of I1 is not available when I2 and I3 are issued; thus R4 has the source tag value corresponding to the output of I1.

When I2 is issued, it is parked in the reservation station of the appropriate functional unit. Since the required result value from I1 is not available, the reservation station entry of I2 also gets the source tag corresponding to the output of I1—i.e. the same source tag value which has been assigned to register R4, since they are both awaiting the same result.

The question now is: Can I3 be issued even before I1 completes and I2 starts execution?

The answer is that, with register renaming—carried out here using source tags—I3 can be issued even before I2 starts execution.

Recall that instruction I2 is RAW dependent on I1, and therefore it has the correct source tag for the output of I1. I2 will receive its required input operand as soon as that is available, when that value would also be copied into R4 over the common data bus. This is exactly what we observed in the previous example.

But suppose I3 is issued even before the output of I1 is available. Now R4 should receive the output of I3 rather than the output of I1. This is simply because, in register R4, the output of I1 is programmed to be overwritten by the output of I3.

Thus, when I3 is issued, R4 will receive the source tag value corresponding to the output of I3—i.e. the functional unit which performs the operation of I3. Its previous source tag value corresponding to the output of I1 will be overwritten.

When the output of I1 (finally) becomes available, it goes to the input of I2, but not to register R4, since this register's source tag now refers to I3. When the output of I3 becomes available, it goes correctly to R4 because of the matching source tag.

For simplicity of discussion, we have not tracked here the outputs of I2 and I3. But the student can verify easily that the two data transfers described above are consistent with the specified sequence of three instructions and the specified dependences.



### Example 12.9 Scheduling across multiple iterations

Consider now the original iterative program loop discussed in Example 12.4.

Let us assume that, without any unrolling by the compiler, this loop executes on a processor which provides branch prediction and implements Tomasulo's algorithm. If instructions from successive loop iterations are available in the processor at one time—because of successful branch prediction(s)—and if floating point units are available, then instructions from successive iterations can execute at one time, in parallel.

But if instructions from multiple iterations are thus executing in parallel within the processor—at one time—then the net effect of these hardware techniques in the processor is the same as that of an unrolled loop. In other words, the processor hardware achieves *on the fly* what otherwise would require unrolling assistance from the compiler!

Even the dependence shown in Example 12.5 across successive loop iterations is handled in a natural way by branch prediction and Tomasulo's algorithm. Basically this dependence across loop iterations becomes RAW dependence between instructions, and is handled in a natural way by source tags and operand forwarding.

This example brings out clearly how a particular method of exploiting parallelism—*loop unrolling*, in this case—can be implemented either by the compiler or, equivalently, by clever hardware techniques employed within the processor.

Example 12.9 illustrates the combined power of sophisticated hardware techniques for dynamic scheduling and branch prediction. With such efficient techniques becoming possible in hardware, the importance of compiler-detected parallelism (Section 12.5) diminishes somewhat in comparison.



### Example 12.10 Calculation of processor clock cycles

Let us consider the number of clock cycles it takes to execute the following sequence of machine instructions. We shall count clock cycles starting from the last clock cycle of instruction 1, so that the answer is independent of the depth of instruction pipeline.

|   |       |            |
|---|-------|------------|
| 1 | LOAD  | mem-a, R4  |
| 2 | FSUB  | R7, R4, R4 |
| 3 | STORE | mem-a, R4  |
| 4 | FADD  | R4, R3, R7 |
| 5 | STORE | mem-b, R7  |

We shall assume that (a) one instruction is issued per clock cycle, (b) floating point operations take two clock cycles each to execute, and (c) memory operations take one clock cycle each when there is L1 cache hit.

If we add the number of clock cycles needed for each instruction, we get the total as  $1+2+1+2+1 = 7$ . However, if no operand forwarding is provided, the RAW dependences on registers R4 and R7 will cost three additional clock cycles (recall Fig. 12.7), for a total of 10 clock cycles for the given sequence of instructions.

With operand forwarding—which is built into Tomasulo's algorithm—one clock cycle is saved on account of each RAW dependence—i.e. between (i) instructions 1 and 2, (ii) instructions 2 and 3, and (iii) instructions 4 and 5.

Thus the total number of clock cycles required, counting from the last clock cycle of instruction 1, is 7. With the assumptions as made here, there is no further scope to schedule these instructions in parallel.

In Tomasulo's algorithm, use of the common data bus and operand forwarding based on source tags results in *decentralized control* of the multiple instructions in execution. In the 1960s and 1970s, Control Data Corporation developed supercomputers CDC 6600 and CDC 7600 with a *centralized* technique to exploit instruction level parallelism.

In these supercomputers, the processor had a centralized *scoreboard* which maintained the status of functional units and executing instructions (see Chapter 6). Based on this status, processor control logic governed the issue and execution of instructions. One part of the scoreboard maintained the status of every instruction under execution, while another part maintained the status of every functional unit. The scoreboard itself was updated at every clock cycle of the processor, as execution progressed.

## 12.10

## BRANCH PREDICTION

The importance of branch prediction for multiple issue processor performance has already been discussed in Section 12.3. About 15% to 20% of instructions in a typical program are branch and jump instructions, including procedure returns. Therefore—if hardware resources are to be fully utilized in a superscalar processor—the processor must start working on instructions beyond a branch, even before the branch instruction itself has completed. This is only possible through some form of branch prediction.

What can be the logical basis for branch prediction? To understand this, we consider first the reasoning which is involved if one wishes to predict the result of a tossed coin.

### Note 12.3 Predicting the outcome of a tossed coin

Can one predict the result of a single coin toss?

If we have prior knowledge—gained somehow—that the coin is unbiased, then the answer is a clear NO, in the sense that both possible outcomes *head* and *tail* are equally probable. The only possible prediction one can make in this case is that the coin will come up either *head* or *tail*—i.e. a prediction which is of no practical value!

But how can we come to have *prior* knowledge that a coin is unbiased? Logically, the only knowledge we can have about a coin is obtained through observations of outcomes in successive tosses. Therefore, the more realistic situation we must address is that we have no prior knowledge about the coin being either unbiased or biased. Having received a coin, any inference we make about it—i.e. whether it is biased or not—can only be on the basis of observations of outcomes of successive tosses of the coin.

In such a situation of no prior knowledge, assume that a coin comes up *head* in its first two tosses. Then simple conditional probability theory predicts that the third toss of the coin has a higher probability of coming up *head* than of coming up *tail*.

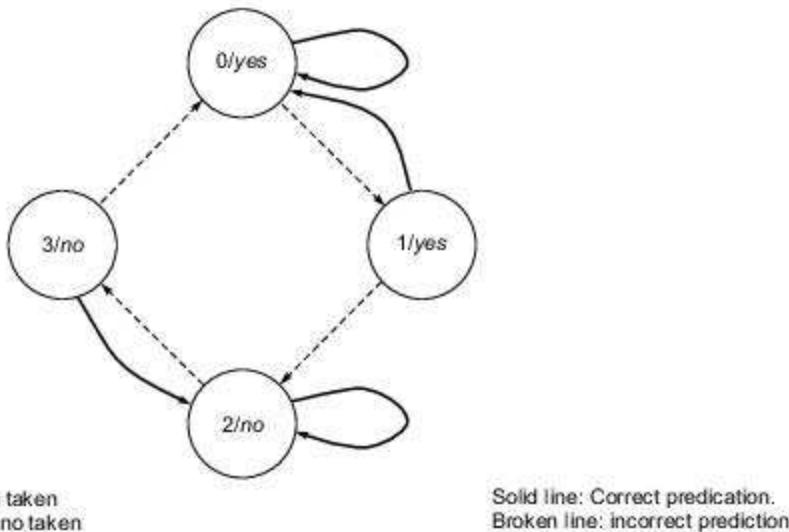
This is a straightforward example of Bayesian reasoning using conditional probabilities, named after Rev. Thomas Bayes [1702–1761]. French Mathematician Laplace [1749–1827] later addressed this and related questions and derived a formula to calculate the respective conditional probabilities<sup>[7]</sup>.

<sup>[7]</sup> For a detailed discussion, with applications, the reader may refer to the book *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*, by Russell and Norvig, Pearson Education.

Like tossed coins, outcomes of conditional branches in computer programs also have *yes* and *no* answers—i.e. a branch is either taken or not taken. But outcomes of conditional branches are in fact biased—because there is strong correlation between (a) successive branches taken at the same conditional branch instruction in a program, and (b) branches taken at two different conditional branch instructions in the same program.

This is how programs behave, i.e. such correlation is an essential property of real-life programs. And such correlation provides the logical basis for branch prediction. The issue for processor designers is how to discover and utilize this correlation *on the fly*—without incurring prohibitive overhead in the process.

A basic branch prediction technique uses a so-called *two-bit predictor*. A two-bit counter is maintained for every conditional branch instruction in the program. The two-bit counter has four possible states; these four states and the possible transitions between these states are shown in Fig. 12.15.



**Fig. 12.15** State transition diagram of 2-bit branch predictor<sup>[8]</sup>

When the counter state is 0 or 1, the respective branch is predicted as *taken*; when the counter state is 2 or 3, the branch is predicted as *not taken*. When the conditional branch instruction is executed and the actual branch outcome is known, the state of the respective two-bit counter is changed as shown in the figure using solid and broken line arrows.

When two successive predictions come out wrong, the prediction is changed from *branch taken* to *branch not taken*, and *vice versa*. In Fig. 12.14, state transitions made on mis-predictions are shown using broken line arrows, while solid line arrows show state transitions made on predictions which come out right.

<sup>[8]</sup> Note that Fig. 12.14 is a slightly redrawn version of the state transition diagram shown earlier in Fig. 6.19 (b).

This scheme uses a two-bit counter for every conditional branch, and there are many conditional branches in the program. Overall, therefore, this branch prediction logic needs a few kilobytes or more of fast memory. One possible organization for this branch prediction memory is in the form of an array which is indexed by low order bits of the instruction address. If twelve low order bits are used to define the array index, for example, then the number of entries in the array is  $4096^{[9]}$ .

To be effective, branch prediction should be carried out as early as possible in the instruction pipeline. As soon as a conditional branch instruction is decoded, branch prediction logic should predict whether the branch is taken. Accordingly, the next instruction address should be taken either as the branch target address (i.e. branch is taken), or the sequentially next address in the program (i.e. branch is not taken).

Can branch prediction be carried out even before the instruction is decoded—i.e. at the instruction fetch stage? Yes, if a so-called *branch target buffer* is provided which has a history of recently executed conditional branches. The branch target buffer is organized as an associative memory accessed by the instruction address; this memory provides quick access to the prediction and the target instruction address needed.

In some programs, whether a conditional branch is taken or not taken correlates better with other conditional branches in the program—rather than with the earlier history of outcomes of the same conditional branch. Accordingly, *correlated predictors* can be designed, which generate a branch prediction based on whether other conditional branches in the program were taken or not taken.

Branch prediction based on the earlier history of the same branch is known as *local prediction*, while prediction based on the history of other branches in the program is known as *global prediction*. A *tournament predictor* uses (i) a global predictor, (ii) a local predictor, and (iii) a *selector* which selects one of the two predictors for prediction at a given branch instruction. The selector uses a two-bit counter per conditional branch—as in Fig. 12.14—to choose between the global and local predictors for the branch. Two successive mis-predictions cause a switch from the local predictor to the global predictor, and *vice versa*; the aim is to infer which predictor works better for the particular branch.

The common element in all these cases is that branch prediction relies on the correlation detected between branches taken or not taken in the running program—and for this, an efficient hardware implementation of the required prediction logic is required.

Considerations outlined here apply also to *jmp prediction*, which is applicable in indirect jumps, *computed go to statements* (used in FORTRAN), and *switch statements* (used in C and C++). Procedure returns can also benefit from a form of jump prediction. The reason is that the address associated with a procedure return is obtained from the runtime procedure stack in main memory; therefore a correct prediction of the return address can save memory access and a few processor clock cycles.

It is also possible to design the branch prediction logic to utilize information gleaned from a prior *execution profile* or *execution trace* of the program. If the same program is going to run on dedicated hardware for years—say for an application such as weather forecasting—then such special effort put into speeding up the program on that dedicated hardware can pay very good dividend over the life of the application. Suppose the execution trace informs us that a particular branch is taken 95% of the time, for example. Then it is a good idea to ‘predict’ the particular branch as always taken—in this case, we are assured that 95% of the predictions made will be correct!

[9] Clearly, if two conditional branch instructions happen to have the same low order bits, then their predictions will become ‘intermingled’. But the probability of two or more such instructions being in execution at the same time would be quite low.

As we discussed in Section 12.3, under any branch prediction scheme, a mis-predicted branch means that subsequent instructions must be flushed from the pipeline. It should of course be noted here that the actual result of a conditional branch instruction—as against its predicted result—is only known when the instruction completes execution.

**Speculative Execution** Instructions executed on the basis of a predicted branch, before the actual branch result is known, are said to involve *speculative execution*.

If a branch prediction turns out to be correct, the corresponding speculatively executed instructions must be committed. If the prediction turns out to be wrong, the effects of corresponding speculative operations carried out within the processor must be cleaned up, and instructions from another branch of the program must instead be executed.

As we have seen in Example 12.2, the strategy results in net performance gain if branch predictions are made with sufficiently high accuracy. The performance benefit of branch prediction can only be gained if prediction is followed by speculative execution.

A conventional processor fetches one instruction after another—i.e. it does not look ahead into the forthcoming instruction stream more than one instruction at a time. To support a deeper and wider—i.e. multiple issue—instruction pipeline, it is necessary for branch prediction and dynamic scheduling logic to look further out into the forthcoming instruction stream. In other words, more of the likely future instructions need to be examined in support of multiple issue scheduling and branch prediction.

*Instruction window*—or simply *window*—is the special memory provided upstream of the fetch unit in the processor to thus look ahead into the forthcoming instruction stream. For the targeted processor performance, the processor designers must integrate and balance the hardware techniques of branch prediction, dynamic scheduling, speculative execution, internal data paths, functional units, and an instruction window of appropriate size.

## 12.11

### LIMITATIONS IN EXPLOITING INSTRUCTION LEVEL PARALLELISM

*There is no such thing as free lunch!*—an American proverb.

Technology is about trade-offs—and therefore it will come as no surprise to the student to learn that there are practical limits on the amount of instruction level parallelism which can be exploited in a single executing instruction stream. In this section we shall try to identify in broad terms some of the main limiting factors<sup>[10]</sup>.

Consider as an example a multiple issue processor which targets four instruction issues per clock cycle, and has eight stages in the instruction pipeline. Clearly, in this processor at one time as many as thirty two instructions may be in different stages of fetch, decode, issue, execute, write result, commit, and so on—and each stage in the processor must handle four instructions in every clock cycle.

Assuming that 15% of the executing instructions are branches and jumps, the processor would handle at one time four to five such instructions—i.e. multiple predicted branches would be executing at one time.

<sup>[10]</sup>The interested student may read *Limits of Instruction-level Parallelism*, by D.W. Wall, Research Report 93/6, Western Research Laboratory, Digital Equipment Corporation, November 1993. Note 12.4 below is a brief summary of this technical report.

Similarly, multiple loads and stores would be in progress at one time. Also, dynamic scheduling would require a fairly large instruction window, to maintain the issue rate at the targeted four instructions per clock cycle.

Consider the instruction window. Instructions in the window must be checked for dependences, to support out of order issue. This requires associative memory and its control logic, which means an overhead in chip area and power consumption; such overhead would increase with window size. Similarly, any form of checking amongst executing instructions—e.g. checking addresses of main memory references, for alias analysis—would involve overhead which increases with issue multiplicity  $k$ . In turn, such increased overhead in aggressive pursuit of instruction level parallelism would adversely impact processor clock speed which is achievable, for a given VLSI technology.

Also, with greater issue multiplicity  $k$ , there would be higher probability of less than  $k$  instructions being issued in some clock cycles. The reason for this can be simply that a functional unit is not available, or that true RAW dependences amongst instructions hold up instruction issue. This would result in missing the target performance of the processor in actual applications, in terms of issue multiplicity  $k$ . Let us say processor A has  $k = 6$  but it is only 60% utilized on average in actual applications; processor B, with the same instruction set but with  $k = 4$ , might have faster clock rate and also higher average utilization, thus giving better performance than A on actual applications.

The increased overhead also necessitates a larger number of stages in the instruction pipeline, so as to limit the total delay per stage and thereby achieve faster clock cycle; but a longer pipeline results in higher cost of flushing the pipeline. Thus the aggregate performance impact of increased overhead finally places limits on what is achievable in practice with aggressively superscalar, VLIW and EPIC architecture.<sup>[11]</sup>

Basically, the increased overhead required within the processor implies that:

- (i) To support higher multiplicity of instruction issue, the amount of control logic required in the processor increases disproportionately, and
- (ii) For higher throughput, the processor must also operate at a high clock rate.

But these two design goals are often at odds, for technical reasons of circuit design, and also because there are practical limits on the amount of power the chip can dissipate.

Power consumption of a chip is roughly proportional to  $N \times f$ , where  $N$  is the number of devices on the chip, and  $f$  is the clock rate. The number of devices on the chip is largely determined by the fabrication technology being used, and power consumption must be held within the limits of the heat dissipation possible.

Therefore the question for processor designers is: For a targeted processor performance, how best to select and utilize the various chip resources available, within the broad *design constraints* of the given circuit technology?

The student may recall that this was the introductory theme of this chapter (Section 12.1), and should note that such design trade-offs are shaping processor design today. To achieve their goals, processor designers make use of extensive software simulations of the processor, using various benchmark programs within the target range of applications. The designers' own experience and insights supplement the simulation results in the process of generating solutions to the actual problems of processor design.

<sup>[11]</sup> In this connection, see also the discussion in the latter part of Section 12.5.

Emergence of hardware support for multi-threading and of multi-core chips, which we shall discuss in the next section, is due in part to the practical limits which have been encountered in exploiting the implicit parallelism within a single instruction stream.

#### **Note 12.4 Wall's Study on Instruction Level Parallelism**

In this section, we have discussed the primary factor limiting the amount of instruction level parallelism which can be exploited in a sequence of executing instructions.

The report by D. W. Wall cited above was the result of a landmark empirical investigation into the amount of instruction level parallelism present in real-life programs. Any detailed discussion on the subject would benefit from a study of this report, and accordingly this note presents a brief summary of the report.

With reference to the overall design space which is available to the processor designer, Wall's report says:

*Moreover, this space is multi-dimensional, because parallelism analysis consists of an ever-growing body of complementary techniques. The payoff of one choice depends strongly on its context in the other choices made. The purpose of this study is to explore that multi-dimensional space, and provide some insight about the importance of different techniques in different contexts.*

The report was based on analysis of the instruction level parallelism present in 18 real-life programs; the number of combinations of processor features tried out during the analysis—i.e. 'points' in the processor design space—was more than 350.

Of the eighteen programs analyzed, twelve were from the standard SPEC92 benchmark suite, three were common utility programs, and three were engineering applications. The programs were compiled into machine language for the MIPS R3000 processor. Table 12.1 presents some information about these programs.

The technique employed in analyzing instruction level parallelism in these programs is known as *oracle-driven trace-based simulation*. For this, a complete trace of the program instructions executed is obtained from a previous run; the trace includes data addresses, results of branches and jumps, and so on. A scheduling algorithm is then used to pack these instructions, as tightly as possible, into a sequence of processor cycles.

As mentioned above, the simulation of processor performance was carried out at more than 350 different points in the space of possible processor configurations. These points differed from each other in the type of parallelism detection techniques used. At each such processor configuration point, an *oracle*<sup>[12]</sup> built into the simulator provided the scheduling decision, one by one, for each executed instruction. In other words, for a given processor configuration, the simulator had functionality built into it to determine the earliest possible schedule for each executed instruction of the program.

For each program, the final schedule of instructions generated by the simulator showed how the program would execute on a processor having the given configuration, as defined by the techniques used to exploit instruction level parallelism. The degree of parallelism obtained was then calculated from the simulation result.

<sup>[12]</sup> In the world of ancient Greece, an *oracle* was a power which could predict future events; one well-known and presumably reliable oracle was at the temple of Delphi.

For example, suppose one of the programs listed in Table 12.1 executed thirty million instructions, as seen from its execution trace. Suppose further that, for a given processor configuration, these instructions could be packed into six million processor cycles. Then the average degree of parallelism obtained for this program, for this particular processor configuration, would be  $30/6 = 5$ .

**Techniques Explored** The range of techniques which was explored in the study to detect and exploit instruction level parallelism is summarized briefly below:

*Register renaming*—with (a) infinite number of registers as renaming targets, (b) finite number of registers, and (c) no register renaming.

*Alias analysis*—with (a) perfect alias analysis, (b) two intermediate levels of alias analysis, and (c) no alias analysis.

*Branch prediction*—with (a) perfect branch prediction, (b) three hardware-based branch prediction schemes, (c) three profile-based branch prediction schemes, and (d) no branch prediction. Hardware predictors used a combination of local and global tables, with different total table sizes. Some branch fanout limits were also applied.

*Indirect jump prediction*—with (a) perfect prediction, (b) intermediate level of prediction, and (c) no indirect jump prediction.

*Window size*—for some of the processor models, different window sizes from an upper limit of 2048 instructions down to 4 instructions were used.

*Cycle width*, i.e. the maximum number of instructions which can be issued in one cycle—(a) 64, (b) 128, and (c) bounded only by window size. Note that, from a practical point of view, cycle widths of both 64 and 128 are on the high side.

*Latencies of processor operations*—five different latency models were used, specifying latencies (in number of clock cycles) for various processor operations.

*Loop unrolling*—was carried out in some of the programs.

*Misprediction penalty*—values of 0 to 10 clock cycles were used.

**Conclusions Reached** With 18 programs and more than 350 processor configurations, it should come as no surprise to the student that Wall's research generated copious results. These results are presented systematically in the full report, which is available on the web. For our purposes, we summarize below the main conclusions of the report.

For the overall degree of parallelism found, the report says:

*Using nontrivial but currently known techniques, we consistently got parallelism between 4 and 10 for most of the programs in our test suite. Vectorizable or nearly vectorizable programs went much higher.*

Branch prediction and speculative execution is identified as the major contributor in the exploitation of instruction level parallelism:

*Speculative execution driven by good branch prediction is critical to the exploitation of more than modest amounts of instruction-level parallelism. If we start with the Perfect model and remove branch prediction, the median parallelism plummets from 30.6 to 2.2 ...*

*Perfect model* in the above excerpt refers to a processor which performs perfect branch prediction, jump prediction, register renaming, and alias analysis. The student will appreciate readily that this is an ideal which is impossible to achieve in practice.

Overall, Wall's study reports good results for the degree of parallelism; but the report also goes on to say that the results are based on '*rather optimistic assumptions*'. In the actual study, this meant: (i) as many copies of functional units as needed, (ii) a perfect memory system with no cache misses, (iii) no penalty for missed predictions, and (iv) no speed penalty of the overhead for aggressive pursuit of instruction level parallelism.

Clearly no real hardware processor can satisfy such ideal assumptions. After listing some more factors which lead to optimistic results, the report concludes:

*Any one of these considerations could reduce the expected payoff of an instruction-parallel machine by a third; together they could eliminate it completely.*

The broad conclusion of Wall's research study therefore certainly seems to support the proverb quoted at the start of this section.

In Chapter 13, we shall review recent advances in technology which have had a major impact on processor design, and we shall also look at some specific commercial products introduced in recent years. We shall see that the basic techniques and trade-offs discussed in this chapter are reflected, in one form or another, in the processors and systems-on-a-chip introduced in recent years.

**Table 12.1** Programs included in Wall's study

| Name of program | Function performed          | No. of instructions executed (millions) |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---|
| sed             | Stream editor               | 1.46                                    |
| egrep           | File search                 | 13.72                                   |
| yacc            | Compiler-compiler           | 30.29                                   |
| metronome       | Timing verifier             | 71.27                                   |
| Grr             | PCB router                  | 144.44                                  |
| Eco             | Recursive tree comparison   | 27.39                                   |
| gcc1            | First pass GNU C compiler   | 22.75                                   |
| Espresso        | Boolean function minimizer  | 134.43                                  |
| Li              | Lisp interpreter            | 263.74                                  |
| Fpppp           | Quantum chemistry benchmark | 244.27                                  |
| Doduc           | Hydrocode simulation        | 284.42                                  |
| Tomeatv         | Vectorized mesh generation  | 301.62                                  |
| hydro2d         | Astrophysical simulation    | 8.23                                    |
| Compress        | Lempel-Ziv file compression | 88.27                                   |
| Ora             | Ray tracing                 | 212.12                                  |
| swm256          | Shallow water simulation    | 301.40                                  |
| alvinn          | Neural network training     | 388.97                                  |
| mdljsp2         | Molecular dynamics model    | 393.07                                  |

**12.12****THREAD LEVEL PARALLELISM**

We have already seen that dependences amongst machine instructions limit the amount of instruction level parallelism which is available to be exploited within the processor. The dependences may be true data dependences (RAW), control dependences introduced by conditional branch instructions, or resource dependences<sup>[13]</sup>.

One way to reduce the burden of dependences is to combine—with hardware support within the processor—instructions from multiple independent threads of execution. Such hardware support for multi-threading would provide the processor with a pool of instructions, in various stages of execution, which have a relatively smaller number of dependences amongst them, since the threads are independent of one another.

Let us consider once again the processor with instruction pipeline of depth eight, and with targeted superscalar performance of four instructions completed in every clock cycle (see Section 12.11). Now suppose that these instructions come from four independent threads of execution. Then, on average, the number of instructions in the processor at any one time from one thread would be  $4 \times 8/4 = 8$ .

With the threads being independent of one another, there is a smaller total number of data dependences amongst the instructions in the processor. Further, with control dependences also being separated into four threads, less aggressive branch prediction is needed.

Another major benefit of such hardware-supported multi-threading is that pipeline stalls are very effectively utilized. If one thread runs into a pipeline stall—for access to main memory, say—then another thread makes use of the corresponding processor clock cycles, which would otherwise be wasted. Thus hardware support for multi-threading becomes an important latency hiding technique.

To provide support for multi-threading, the processor must be designed to switch between threads—either on the occurrence of a pipeline stall, or in a round robin manner. As in the case of the operating system switching between running processes, in this case the hardware context of a thread within the processor must be preserved.

But in this case what exactly is the meaning of the *context of a thread*?

Basically, thread context includes the full set of registers (programmable registers and those used in register renaming), PC, stack pointer, relevant memory map information, protection bits, interrupt control bits, etc. For  $N$ -way multi-threading support, the processor must store at one time the thread contexts of  $N$  executing threads. When the processor switches, say, from thread A to thread B, control logic ensures that execution of subsequent instruction(s) occurs with reference to the context of thread B.

Note that thread contexts need not be saved and later restored. As long as the processor preserves within itself multiple thread contexts, all that is required is that the processor be able to switch between thread contexts from one clock cycle to the next.

As we saw in the previous section, there are limits on the amount of instruction level parallelism which can be extracted from a single stream of executing instructions—i.e. a single thread. But, with steady advances in VLSI technology, the aggregate amount of functionality that can be built into a single chip has been growing steadily.

<sup>[13]</sup> As discussed above, we assume that WAR and WAW dependences can be handled using some form of register renaming.

Therefore hardware support for multi-threading—as well as the provision of multiple processor cores on a single chip—can both be seen as natural consequences of the steady advances in VLSI technology. Both these developments address the needs of important segments of modern computer applications and workloads.

Depending on the specific strategy adopted for switching between threads, hardware support for multi-threading may be classified as one of the following:

- (i) *Coarse-grain multi-threading* refers to switching between threads only on the occurrence of a major pipeline stall—which may be caused by, say, access to main memory, with latencies of the order of a hundred processor clock cycles.
- (ii) *Fine-grain multi-threading* refers to switching between threads on the occurrence of any pipeline stall, which may be caused by, say, L1 cache miss. But this term would also apply to designs in which processor clock cycles are regularly being shared amongst executing threads, even in the absence of a pipeline stall.
- (iii) *Simultaneous multi-threading* refers to machine instructions from two (or more) threads being issued in parallel in each processor clock cycle. This would correspond to a multiple-issue processor where the multiple instructions issued in a clock cycle come from an equal number of independent execution threads.

With increasing power of VLSI technology, the development of multi-core *systems-on-a-chip* (SoCs) was also inevitable, since there are practical limits to the number of threads a single processor core can support. Each core on the Sun UltraSparc T2, for example, supports eight-way fine-grain multi-threading, and the chip has eight such cores. Multi-core chips promise higher net processing performance per watt of power consumption.

*Systems-on-a-chip* are examples of fascinating design trade-offs and the technical issues which have been discussed in this chapter. Of course, we have discussed here only the basic design issues and techniques. For any actual task of processor design, it is necessary to make many design choices and trade-offs, validate the design using simulations, and then finally complete the design in detail to the level of logic circuits.

Over the last couple of decades, enormous advances have taken place in various areas of computer technology; these advances have had a major impact on processor and system design. In the next chapter, we shall discuss in some detail these advances and their impact on processor and system design. We shall also study in brief several commercial products, as case studies in how actual processors and systems are designed.



## Summary

Processor design—or the choice of a processor from amongst several alternatives—is the central element of computer system design. Since system design can only be carried out with specific target application loads in mind, it follows that processor design should also be tailored for target application loads. To satisfy the overall system performance criteria, various elements of the system must be balanced in terms of their performance—i.e. no element of the system should become a performance bottleneck.

One of the main processor design trade-offs faced in this context is this: Should the processor be designed to squeeze the maximum possible parallelism from a single thread, or should processor hardware support multiple independent threads, with less aggressive exploitation of instruction level parallelism within each thread? In this chapter, we studied the various standard techniques for exploiting instruction level parallelism, and also discussed some of the related design issues and trade-offs.

Dependences amongst instructions make up the main constraint in the exploitation of instruction level parallelism. Therefore, in its essence, the problem here can be defined as: executing a given sequence of machine instructions in the smallest possible number of processor clock cycles, while respecting the true dependences which exist amongst the instructions. To study possible solutions, we looked at two possible prototype processors: one provided with a reorder buffer, and the other with reservation stations associated with its various functional units.

In theory, compiler-detected instruction level parallelism should simplify greatly the issues to be addressed by processor hardware. This is because, in theory, the compiler would do the difficult work of dependence analysis and instruction scheduling. Processor hardware would then be 'dumb and fast'—it would simply execute at a high speed the machine instructions which specify parallel operations. However, many types of runtime events—such as interrupts and cache misses—cannot be predicted at compile time. Processor hardware must therefore provide for dynamic scheduling to exploit instruction level parallelism, limiting the value of what the compiler alone can achieve.

Operand forwarding is a hardware technique to transfer a required operand to multiple destinations in parallel, in one clock cycle, over the common data bus—thus avoiding sequential transfers over multiple clock cycles. To achieve this, it is necessary that processor hardware should dynamically detect and exploit such potential parallelism in data transfers. The benefits lie in reduced wait time in functional units, and better utilization of the common data bus, which is an important hardware resource.

A reorder buffer is a simple mechanism to commit instructions in program order, even if their corresponding operations complete out of order within the processor. Within the reorder buffer, instructions are queued in program order with four typical fields for each instruction—instruction identifier, value computed, program-specified destination of the value computed, and a flag indicating whether the instruction has completed. This simple technique ensures that program state and processor state are correctly preserved, but does not resolve WAR and WAW dependences within the instructions.

Register renaming is a clever technique to resolve WAR and WAW dependences within the instruction stream. This is done by re-mapping source and target programmable registers of executing machine instructions to a larger set of program-invisible registers; thereby the second instruction of a WAR or WAW dependence does not write to the same register which is used by the first instruction. The renaming is done dynamically, without any performance penalty in clock cycles.

Tomasulo's algorithm was developed originally for the IBM 369/91 processor, which was designed for intensive scientific and engineering applications. Operand forwarding is achieved using source tags, which are also sent on the common data bus along with the operand value. Use of reservation stations with functional units provides an effective register renaming mechanism which resolves WAR and WAW dependences.

About 15% to 20% of instructions in a typical machine language program are branch and jump instructions. Therefore for any pipelined processor—but especially for a superscalar processor—branch

prediction and speculative execution are critical to achieving targeted performance. A simple two-bit counter for every branch instruction can serve as a basis for branch prediction; using a combination of local and global branch prediction, more elaborate schemes can be devised.

Limitations in exploiting greater degree of instruction level parallelism arise from the increased overhead in the required control logic. The limitations may apply to achievable clock rates, power consumption, or the actual processor utilization achieved while running application programs. Thread-level parallelism allows processor resources to be shared amongst multiple independent threads executing at one time. For the target application, processor designers must choose the right combination of instruction level parallelism, thread-level parallelism, and multiple processor cores on a chip.



## Exercises

**Problem 12.1** Define in brief the meaning of computer architecture; within the scope of that meaning, explain in brief the role of processor design.

**Problem 12.2**

- (a) When can we say that a computer system is balanced with respect to its performance?
- (b) In a particular computer system, the designers suspect that the read/write bandwidth of the main memory has become the performance bottleneck. Describe in brief the type of test program you would need to run on the system, and the type of measurements you would need to make, to verify whether main memory bandwidth is indeed the performance bottleneck. You may make additional assumptions about the system if you can justify the assumptions.

**Problem 12.3** Recall that, in the example system shown in Fig. 12.1, the bandwidth of the shared processor-memory bus is a performance bottleneck. Assume now that this bandwidth is increased by a factor of six. Discuss in brief the likely effect of this increase on system performance. After this change is made, is there a likelihood that some other subsystem becomes the performance bottleneck?

**Problem 12.4** Explain in brief some of the basic design issues and trade-offs faced in processor design, and the role of VLSI technology selected for building the processor.

**Problem 12.5** Explain in brief the significance of (i) processor state, (ii) program state, and (iii) committing an executed instruction.

**Problem 12.6**

- (a) Explain in brief, with one example each, the various types of dependences which must be considered in the process of exploiting instruction level parallelism.
- (b) Define in brief the problem of exploiting instruction level parallelism in a single sequence of executing instructions.

**Problem 12.7** With static instruction scheduling by the compiler, the processor designer does not need to provide for dynamic scheduling in hardware. Is this statement true or false? Justify your answer in brief.

**Problem 12.8** Describe in brief the structure of the reorder buffer, and the functions which it can and cannot perform in the process of exploiting instruction level parallelism.

**Note for Exercises 9 to 15**

The following three sequences of machine instructions are to be used for Exercises 9 to 15. Note that instructions other than LOAD and STORE have three operands each; from left to right they are, respectively, source 1, source 2 and destination. '#' sign indicates an immediate operand.

Assume that (a) one instruction is issued per clock cycle, (b) no resource constraints limit instruction level parallelism, (c) floating point operations take two clock cycles each to execute, and (d) load/store memory operations take one clock cycle each when there is L1 cache hit.

|             |   |       |            |
|-------------|---|-------|------------|
| Sequence 1: | 1 | LOAD  | mem-a, R1  |
|             | 2 | LOAD  | mem-b, R2  |
|             | 3 | LOAD  | mem-c, R3  |
|             | 4 | FADD  | R2, R1, R1 |
|             | 5 | FSUB  | R3, R1, R1 |
|             | 6 | STORE | mem-a, R1  |
| Sequence 2: | 1 | LOAD  | mem-a, R1  |
|             | 2 | FADD  | R2, R1, R1 |
|             | 3 | STORE | mem-a, R1  |
|             | 4 | FADD  | #1, R3, R2 |
|             | 5 | STORE | mem-d, R2  |
|             | 6 | LOAD  | mem-e, R2  |
| Sequence 3: | 1 | LOAD  | mem-a, R1  |
|             | 2 | FADD  | R1, R2, R2 |
|             | 3 | STORE | mem-b, R2  |
|             | 4 | FADD  | #1, R3, R2 |
|             | 5 | STORE | mem-d, R2  |
|             | 6 | LOAD  | mem-e, R2  |

**Problem 12.9** Draw dependence graphs of the above sequences of machine instructions, marking on them the type of data dependences, with the respective registers involved.

**Problem 12.10** Assume that the processor has no provision for register renaming and operand forwarding, and that all memory references are satisfied from L1 cache. Determine the number of clock cycles it takes to execute the above sequences of instructions, counting from the last clock cycle of instruction 1.

**Problem 12.11** Now assume that register renaming is implemented to resolve WAR and WAW dependences. Determine the number of clock cycles it takes to execute the above sequences of instructions, counting from the last clock cycle of instruction 1.

**Problem 12.12** Comment on the scope for operand forwarding within the sequences of instructions. Assume that the load/store unit can also take part in operand forwarding.

**Problem 12.13** Assume that, in addition to register renaming, operand forwarding is also implemented as discussed in Exercise 12. Determine the number of clock cycles it takes to execute the above sequences of instructions, counting from the last clock cycle of instruction 1.

**Problem 12.14** Consider your answers to Exercises 10, 11 and 13 above. Explain in brief how these answers would be affected if an L1 cache miss occurs in instruction 1, which takes five clock cycles to satisfy from L2 cache.

**Problem 12.15** With reference to Exercise 13, describe in brief how Tomasulo's algorithm would implement register renaming and operand forwarding.

**Problem 12.16** Explain in brief the meaning of alias analysis as applied to runtime memory addresses.

**Problem 12.17** A particular processor makes use of a 2-bit predictor for each branch. Based on a program execution trace, the actual branch behavior at a particular conditional branch instruction is found to be as follows:

T T ... T N T T ... T N ...  
 ← k times →      ← k times →

Here T stands for branch taken, and N stands for branch not taken. In other words, the actual branch behavior forms a repeating sequence, such that the branch is taken k times (T), then not taken once (N).

With the 2-bit branch predictor, find fraction of correct branch predictions made if  $k = 1, k = 2, k = 5$  and  $k = 50$

**Problem 12.18** Discuss in brief the difference between local and global branch prediction strategies, and how a two-bit selector may be used per branch to select between the two.

**Problem 12.19**

- (a) Wall's study on instruction level parallelism is based on oracle-driven trace-based simulation. Explain in brief what is meant by this type of simulation.
- (b) Wall's study of instruction level parallelism makes certain 'optimistic' assumptions about processor hardware. What are these assumptions? Against each of these assumptions, list the corresponding 'realistic' assumption which we should make, keeping in view the characteristics of real processors.

**Problem 12.20** Discuss in brief the basic trade-off in processor design between exploiting instruction level parallelism in a single executing thread, and providing hardware support for multiple threads.

**Problem 12.21** Describe in brief what is meant by the context of a thread, and what are the typical operations involved in switching between threads.

**Problem 12.22** Describe in brief the different strategies which can be considered for switching between threads in a processor which provides hardware support for multi-threading.